

COASTAL RESOURCES FOLIO
SOUTH MAINLAND COAST
(Gibson's Landing to Redonda Islands)

PREPARED BY:

M.J. ROMAINÉ, Project Manager

- . Project Design
- . Folio Layout
- . Editorial Production

Michael W. DUNN, Head
Physical Resources

Murray LASHMAR, Head
Fisheries and Oceanography

Trevor J. SUMMERS, Head
Biological and Hydrological Resources

Derek A. WOLFF, Head
Land/Water Use and Status

- . Marine Sediments
- . Surficial Materials
- . Physical Shorezone
- . Physical Processes and Energy

- . Oceanography-Salinity, Temperature
- . Fish and Shellfish Resources, Use, Habitat

- . Water Resources
- . Marine Vegetation
- . Marine Birds/Marine Mammals
- . Recreation

- . Zoning and Administration
- . Plans and Proposals
- . Land/Water Use and Status
- . Marine Facilities

CARTOGRAPHY, SCIENTIFIC AND TECHNICAL SUPPORT BY:

Julia ANDERSON - Typing and Word Processing
Patricia CAMPBELL - Technical Support - Land/Water Use
Anita CHARLES - Cartography
Magdalene CAWLEY - Cartography
Spencer Wm. DANE - Map and Narrative Editor
Alexandra DONSON - Cartography
Michael E. HAGEN - Operations Coordinator
Dianne HOLME - Technical Support - Land/Water Use
Aurelia JACOB - Scientific Support - Physical Resources
Joyce KERR - Technical Support - Land/Water Use/Cartography

Kenneth W. LONG - Cartographic Supervisor/Cartography
Stephen NG - Technical Support - Land/Water Use and Oceanography
Ellen NOVOSEL - Typing and Editing
Rosemary RATZINGER - Cartography/Technical Support
Tina Louise SPALDING - Cartographic Supervisor/Cartography
Jaan A. TAMM - Cartographic Advisor/Coordinator
Greg R. THRIFT - Technical Support - Physical Resources/Cartography
Irene WILKIN - Technical Support - Land/Water Use
Emmy Van WISSEN - Typing and Word Processing

LANDS DIRECTORATE

ENVIRONMENT CANADA
Vancouver, B.C.

INTERAGENCY CONTRIBUTIONS

Map Preparation and Production

Cartography Section
Land Resource Research Institute
Agriculture Canada
Ottawa, Ontario

Canadian Hydrographic Service
Institute of Ocean Sciences
Fisheries and Oceans Canada
Sidney, B.C.

Map Reproduction Laboratory
Surveys & Resources Mapping Branch
B.C. Ministry of Environment
Victoria, B.C.

- . 1:50,000 base maps

- . Photomechanical Production of
Coastal Resources Map Series

- . Duplication of Base and Theme Maps

Provision of Advisory and Support Services

Douglas GORDON/Sheldon A. McCULLOUGH
Socio-Economic Development
Indian & Northern Affairs Canada

A.B. CORNFORD/S. CROWTHER
L.F. GIOVANDO/R.E. HERLINVEAUX
Institute of Ocean Sciences
Fisheries and Oceans Canada

R.D. STEVENS/Pam WAKEMAN
Environmental Protection Service
Environment Canada

Tom D. BIRD/Bruce McDONALD
Habitat Management Division
Fisheries and Oceans Canada

Financial Support By:

Lands Directorate
Environment Canada
Vancouver, B.C.

Regional Director
Generals's Office
Environment Canada
Vancouver, B.C.

Habitat Protection
Division
Fisheries & Oceans
Canada
Vancouver, B.C.

Socio-Economic Development
Indian & Northern Affairs
Canada
Vancouver, B.C.

Oceanographic Information
Division
Institute of Ocean Sciences
Victoria, B.C.

New Employment Expansion
& Development Secretariat
Employment & Immigration
Canada
Vancouver, B.C.

Lands Directorate
Environment Canada
Ottawa, Ontario

ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS

The Coastal Resources Folio represents a cooperative effort, its contents dependent on information held by various specialists and agencies at the federal, provincial, regional and local levels of government as well as by public and private organizations. In all instances, cooperation, advice, assistance, data and, when requested, logistic and technical support, were given freely. The Sources Section of this Folio under "Personal Communications" identifies those individuals and agencies whose valuable contributions are gratefully acknowledged.

November, 1983

LIBRARY

Canadian Wildlife Service

ENVIRONMENT CANADA

PACIFIC WILDLIFE RESEARCH CENTRE

1.0 INTRODUCTION

1.1 THE COASTAL RESOURCES FOLIO PROJECT

The purpose of the Coastal Resources Folio Project is to provide an inventory and synthesis of existing biophysical and land/water use information in a format useful for environmental assessments, integrated and single purpose planning and management programs, coast-wide and regional resource allocation studies, and the identification of baseline study needs.

The Coastal Resources Folio Project was initiated by the Lands Directorate, Environment Canada in the fall of 1979.

This folio - Coastal Resources Folio; South Mainland Coast - is the third of a series for the British Columbia Coastal Zone.

1.2 THE STUDY AREA

The South Mainland Coast resources folio study area extends from Gibsons Landing in the south to the Redonda Islands in the north. The seaward boundary extends westward to the mid-point of the Strait of Georgia.

The landward boundary extends to approximately the 150 metre (500 foot) elevation.

1.3 METHODOLOGY

The following steps are used to develop the Coastal Resources Folio:

- Overall purpose, approach and content of folio developed;
- Meetings held with selected federal, provincial and local agencies to seek advice on priorities and to locate sources of baseline information;
- Initial selection of criteria for each theme made and the collection of baseline information begun;

- Contacts with agency personnel made to obtain baseline data and advice on the type of information that should be presented in the Folio;
- Information transferred to working maps, tables and reports;
- Limited field work supported by air photo and video tape interpretation undertaken to fill some data gaps in shore process information, marine vegetation and land/water uses;
- Documents edited, finalized and published.

1.4 USE AND LIMITATIONS

1.4.1 Potential Use

A concerted effort has been made to ensure that the data presented in the Folio are technically correct and a true reflection of the original collected information. An effort has also been made to portray information in its primary - baseline form. The transformation of the baseline data into such interpretations as erosion hazards, environmental sensitivities, urban suitability, biological productivity and potential uses or conflicts, are left to the user who will have his/her own specific management responsibilities, criteria and information needs.

1.4.2 Limitations

The following limitations are inherent in the Folio:

1. The Folio is only as complete and accurate as the information upon which it is based. Primary data sources are frequently not consistent in format, quality, level of detail, or date of collection. In other instances baseline data may be absent or not readily available.
2. The Land/Water Use and Status theme maps and tables, because of the nature of the information base, become quickly outdated. This is particularly true of foreshore lease information.
3. The scale of presentation at 1:50,000 is not suited for site-specific investigations. Pockets of marine vegetation, small parks or minor land use zones areas, for example, cannot be depicted at this scale. Further, in the transferring of information from one scale to another, errors in the placement of boundaries can result. For detailed analysis, the original source documents should always be consulted.

4. The marine substrates, physical shore zone, seaweeds and salt-marshes data were supplemented by aerial photo and video tape interpretations. Verification by field checks was limited.

The Lands Directorate, Environment Canada, welcomes comments on the use and limitations of the Folio in order that improvements can be made to subsequent Coastal Resources Folio documents.

1.5 FOLIO CONTENT AND FORMAT

1.5.1 Folio Content

The Coastal Resources Folio contains the following sections.

1.0 INTRODUCTION

The introductory section is designed to inform the reader as to the purpose, content and availability of the folio.

2.0 COASTAL RESOURCES MAP SERIES (1:50,000)

The intent of this section is to portray in a standardized form, all available and relevant (spatial and/or point source) information for each of the 17 themes. The maps are designed to permit the overlay of any combination of two or more theme maps. Such an approach was developed in recognition of the value and use of overlay analysis techniques to regional planning, in initial assessments of project proposals, and in the derivation of secondary information based upon the comparison and/or combination of different data sets.

3.0 TABLES

This section consists of Land/Water Use and Status Tables and provides detailed data on such subjects as: foreshore leases - areas, use and leasholder; land tenure; types of services and number of berths at marinas; and zoning by-laws. Descriptive highlights are provided for each base map and a glossary has been prepared for each table and topic.

4.0 PENDER HARBOUR MAP SERIES (1:10,000)

Due to the recognized biological importance, and the intensity of land/water uses associated with the Pender Harbour area, this series provides supplemental and more detailed information.

5.0 COMPANION REPORT

The purpose of the Companion Report is to provide a summary of existing and selected information on coastal resource values, uses, and processes. The Companion Report is a compilation of information on many topics and is designed to complement those themes and subjects portrayed in the Coastal Resources Map Series.

6.0 SOURCES

The Sources Section provides a list of information sources pertinent to the study area. Sources are organized under the same headings as the previous sections. In addition to a bibliography, the Sources Section includes other primary data sources such as aerial photographs, field surveys, computer print-outs, zoning by-laws, and personal communications.

7.0 GLOSSARY

This section provides definitions of selected terms and categories contained either on the map manuscripts or in the Companion Report.

1.5.2 Folio Format

The Coastal Resources Folio consists of two documents:

Volume I is an atlas containing Section 1.0 Introduction, Section 2.0 Coastal Resources Map Series, Section 3.0 Tables, and Section 4.0 Pender Harbour Map Series. Volume I consists of four separate folios - one for each of the four base map areas.

Volume II is a report which applies to the entire study area and contains Section 1.0 Introduction, Section 5.0 Companion Report, Section 6.0 Sources, and Section 7.0 Glossary.

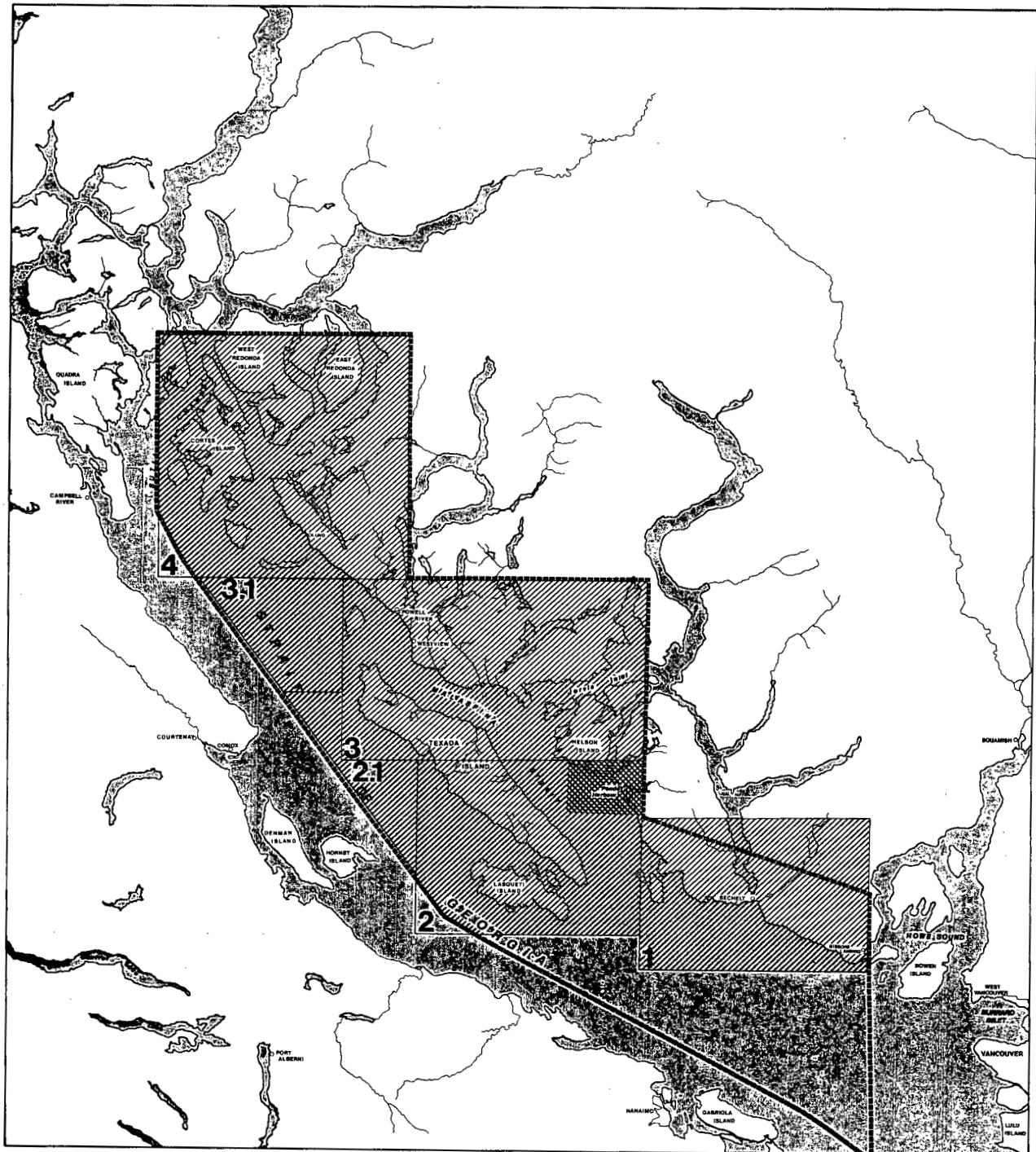
1.6 COVERAGE AND AVAILABILITY

1.6.1 Coverage

The following charts will be of assistance in ordering the Coastal Resources Folio.

1.6.1.1 Area Coverage

Location and boundaries of study area and four base maps.



1.6.1.2 Theme Maps (Coastal Resources Map Series)

When ordering 1:50,000 theme maps, please quote year of publication; base maps and theme number, in accordance with the following chart.

Year	Base Maps	Theme Map No. and Title
1983	1, 2, 2.1, 3, 3.1, 4	-1 Marine Sediments
1983	1, 2, 2.1, 3, 3.1, 4	-2 Submarine Topography
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-3 Physical Shorezone
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-3 Physical Shorezone Units Table
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-4 Generalized Terrain Limitations
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-5 Physical Oceanography - Station Distribution
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-6 Physical Oceanography - Station Summary Table
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-7 Water Resources - Discharge, Use and Contamination
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-8 Seaweeds, Saltmarshes and Marine Mammals
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-9 Marine Bird Surveys
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-10 Fish and Shellfish Resources
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-11 Fish Spawning and Rearing Areas
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-12.1 Generalized Zoning and Marine Facilities
1983	2, 3, 4	-12.2 Land/Water Use
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-13 Land/Water Use Plans and Proposals
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-14 Selected Administrative Boundaries
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-15 Land/Water Status
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-16 Forest Cover
1983	1, 2, 3, 4	-17 Recreational Areas, Special Features and Access

For example 83-3-1 refers to base map number 3, Marine Sediments published in 1983.

1.6.1.3 Tables

The following tables are available:

- Zoning and Marine Facilities
- Land Use, Plans and Forest Cover
- Land and Water Status

When ordering, please quote table title and required base map coverage.

1.6.1.4 Theme Maps (Pender Harbour Series)

The following theme maps have been prepared:

- 83.1 Physical Shorezone
- 83.2 Fish and Shellfish Resources
- 83.3 Fish Spawning and Rearing Areas
- 83.4 Land/Water Status

When ordering, please quote year of publication and theme map number.

1.6.1.5 Report

Volume II provides coverage for the entire South Mainland Coast (Gibsons Landing to Redonda Islands) study area.

1.6.2 Availability

The Coastal Resources Folio is available either from:

Environment Canada
P.O. Box 1540, 800 Burrard Street
Vancouver, B.C.
V6Z 2J7

Phone: (604) 666-5920

OR

MAPS-B.C.
Surveys & Resources Mapping Branch
B.C. Ministry of Environment
Parliament Buildings
Victoria, B.C.
V8V 1X5
Phone (604) 387-1441

1.6.3 Orders and Cost

Requests should be placed by mail. The Folio can be ordered by base map, resource theme, or by section. Section 2.0 Coastal Resources Map Series (1:50,000) and Section 3.0 Pender Harbour Series (1:10,000) Manuscripts can be ordered as either ozalids (paper prints) or as films (diaz or auto-positives).

The cost of your order will be in accordance with the following arrangement.

Document	Request		Cost
	Number of Copies	Type of Product	
Volume I - Atlas	Limited number of single copy theme maps or tables	Ozalid (paper print)	No charge
		Films (diaz or auto-positives)	At current rates established by local printing firms or by the Provincial Map Production Laboratory. Direct billing to apply.
	Multiple (duplicate) copies of theme maps or tables	Ozalids (paper prints)	At current rates established by local printing firms or by the Provincial Map Reproduction Laboratory. Direct billing to apply. Estimated Cost (1983 quotations) \$1.05 - \$2.00 per print*.

Volume II Limited number of copies available free of charge.
Report

* Prices subject to change.

SECTION 5: COMPANION REPORT

PREPARED BY

M.A. Lashmar
M.W. Dunn
T.J. Summers
D.A. Wolff

EDITED BY

M.W. Dunn
M.J. Romaine
T.J. Summers

LANDS DIRECTORATE
ENVIRONMENT CANADA
VANCOUVER, B.C.

January 1984

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
LIST OF FIGURES.	v
LIST OF TABLES	vii
5.1 INTRODUCTION.	1
5.2 GENERAL SETTING	1
.2.1 POPULATION.	1
.2.2 LABOUR FORCE.	1
The Sunshine Coast Regional District	1
Powell River Regional District	3
.2.3 FORESTRY.	3
The Resource Base.	3
The Sunshine Coast	3
Powell River Regional District	3
.2.4 FISHERIES	5
.2.5 AGRICULTURE	5
.2.6 MINING.	8
.2.7 TOURISM	8
5.3 PHYSICAL FEATURES	8
.3.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY.	8
The Strait of Georgia and Adjacent Channels.	8
The Georgia Lowland.	12
.3.2 GEOLOGY	12
Bedrock.	12
Surficial Geology.	13
.3.3 SOILS	13
.3.4 CLIMATE	14
Temperature and Precipitation.	14
Wind Patterns.	14

	<u>Page</u>
5.3.5 PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY.	15
Tides	15
Currents.	15
Waves	16
.3.6 WATER RESOURCES.	16
Hydrology	16
Water Quality	16
5.4 BIOLOGICAL RESOURCES	19
.4.1 TERRESTRIAL VEGETATION	19
.4.2 SEaweEDS AND SALTMARSHES	25
.4.3 MARINE MAMMALS	27
.4.4 MARINE BIRDS	30
Ecology	30
.4.5 FISH AND SHELLFISH RESOURCES	37
Importance of the Study Area.	37
Anadromous and Resident Fish Species.	44
Resource	44
Habitat Requirements.	49
Groundfish.	54
Resource	54
Habitat Requirements.	57
Other Finfish	61
Herring.	61
Habitat Requirements.	63
Shellfish	64
Habitat Requirements.	65
5.5 RECREATIONAL RESOURCES	71
.5.1 COMPETITION FOR SPACE AND RESOURCES.	71
.5.2 ACCESS	72

	<u>Page</u>
5.5.3 POLLUTION.	73
5.6 PHYSICAL PROCESSES AND ENERGY.	73
.6.1 REGIONAL WAVE CLIMATE.	73
Wave Height	74
Wind Strength.	74
Wind Duration.	77
Fetch.	77
Synthesis	79
Wave Energy	81
Wave Period.	81
Water Levels	81
Nearshore Slope.	89
Synthesis	89
.6.2 CIRCULATION.	92
Overall Patterns.	92
Factors Influencing the Movement of Oil Spills	93
.6.3 ATMOSPHERIC MIXING	94
.6.4 SEISMIC HAZARD	96
Magnitude	96
Depth of Focus and Mechanism.	96
Soil Type	96
Distance.	100
Quality of Building Construction.	100
Secondary Effects	102
5.7 FACTORS OF BIOLOGICAL PRODUCTIVITY	102
The Area.	102
.7.1 THE PHYSICAL/CHEMICAL ENVIRONMENT.	103
.7.2 PRIMARY PRODUCTION - PHYTOPLANKTON	104
.7.3 PRIMARY PRODUCTION - SEAWEEDS AND SALTMARSHES.	107

	<u>Page</u>
5.8 THE ADMINISTRATION AND MANAGEMENT OF COASTAL RESOURCES. . . .	110
.8.1 INTRODUCTION.	110
.8.2 THE ADMINISTRATION OF COASTAL LAND.	110
.8.3 WATER MANAGEMENT.	112
Water Supply and Licensing	112
Water Quality and Waste Management	113
.8.4 MARINE BIRDS.	114
.8.5 LOCAL PLANNING.	116

LIST OF FIGURES

<u>Figure</u>		<u>Page</u>
1	Probable Cordilleran Icesheet Contour	9
2	Maximum Marine Overlap.	10
3	Summary of Observed Relative Sea-level Changes in British Columbia	11
4	Hydrograph for Lang Creek Station No. 08GB007	17
5	Hydrograph for Roberts Creek Station No. 08GA047.	17
6	Moisture Balance for Cortes Island.	18
7	Moisture Balance for Merry Island	18
8	Moisture Balance for Powell River	18
9	Biogeoclimatic Zones of Parts of the Study Area	20
10	Schematic Sequence and Relationship of Biogeoclimatic Variants Represented by Zonal Ecosystems	23
11	Fisheries Statistical Areas of the Strait of Georgia.	41
12	Percentage Frequency of Hours with Wind Speeds 30 km/hr (17 knots) or Greater for Ballenas Lighstation (1967-80)	75
13	Percentage Frequency of Hours with Wind Speeds 30 km/hr (17 knots) or Greater for Merry Island (1963-80)	76
14	Percentage Exceedance - Significant Height and Maximum Height . .	80
15	Power Spectrum of Relative Amount of Energy Contained by Waves over a Range of Wave Periods.	82
16	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 108, Roberts Bank .	83
17	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 97, Halibut Bank. .	84
18	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 112, Powell River .	85
19	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 117, Lund	86
20	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 121, Gibsons Landing	87
21	Percentage Occurrence of Peak Periods Station 123, Fisherman's Cove	88
22	Storm Surges - Point Atkinson and Little River, B.C., December 1982	90
23	Location of Sample Stations	91
24	Average Surface Circulation in Spring and Summer in the Strait of Georgia	92

<u>Figure</u>		<u>Page</u>
25	Frequencies of Episodes of Persistent Light Surface Winds. . . .	95
26	Percentage Frequencies of Ground-Based Inversions by Season. . .	95
27	Strain Release as a Function of Time	98
28	'Continental' Area Regional Distribution of Strain Release Since 1951	101
29	Generalized Pattern of Primary Production (Phytoplankton) in the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca System.	105
30	Schematic of Energy Transfer between Trophic Levels in Unlimited (A) and Limited (B) Ecosystems	106
31	Average Annual Rate of Net Plant Production for Selected Ecosystems	108
32	Number of Species in Relation to Salinity Level ($^{\circ}/_{00}$).	109

LIST OF TABLES

<u>Table</u>		<u>Page</u>
1	Population of Regional Districts, 1981	2
2	Forest Cover Classes (hectares) for Sunshine Coast and Powell River Regions.	4
3	Fish Processing Plants Sunshine Coast-Powell River Region (1981)	5
4	Wholesale Value of Seafood Production in Comparison to Provincial Totals.	6
5a	Number of Farms and Revenue.	7
5b	Farm Size.	7
6	Climatic Characteristics	21
7	Characteristic Combinations of Species	22
8a,b,c	A Synopsis of Some Characteristics of Biogeoclimatic Units of British Columbia	24, 25
9	Cetaceans Occurring in Washington State and British Columbia . .	28
10	Functional Feeding Groups and Representative Prey Taxa of Marine Mammals Known or Suspected to Occur in North Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca	29
11	Functional Feeding Groups and Representative Prey Taxa of Marine and Shore Birds Common to Northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca	31
12	Size Relationships and Feeding Methods of Major Species in the Eastern North Pacific and Bering Sea	35
13	Nest-Site Preference for Seabirds Breeding from Cape Fairweather, Alaska, to the Columbia River, Washington.	36
14	Oil Vulnerability Index (OVI) for Representative Waterbirds in the Northeast Pacific Region	38
15	A Synopsis of the Impacts Caused by Selected Activities Common within Estuaries	40
16	Percentage of Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait Commercial Fish and Shellfish Catch Originating from the South Mainland Coast.	42
17	Percentage of Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait Sport and Indian Food Fisheries Catches Originating from the South Mainland Coast	43

<u>Table</u>		<u>Page</u>
18	Salmon Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Average Annual Commercial Salmon Catch 1975 to 1981, the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	44
19	Salmon and Trout Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Sport Fishing Catch 1980 to 1981, 1982; Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	46
20	Salmon Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Average Annual Sport Catch 1972 to 1976, Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System	47
21	A Comparison of Sport Versus Commercial Salmon Catch in the Strait of Georgia Region for the Period 1972-1975	47
22	Estimated Annual Steelhead Trout Catch for the South Mainland Coast, 1973-74 to 1982-83	48
23	Salmon and Steelhead Fisheries of South Mainland Coast: Average Annual Native Subsistence Catch, 1972 to 1976	49
24	Inventory of Major Physical Characteristics of Spawning Streams and a Checklist of Utilization by Individual Fish Species	51
25	Average Annual Spawning Escapements to South Mainland Coast Streams 1967-1976 and 1977-1981	52
26	Groundfish Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Annual Commercial Catch, 1979 to 1982, Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	55
27	Groundfish Fishery of the South Mainland Coast: Annual Commercial Catch, 1979 to 1983, Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	56
28	Groundfish Fishery South Mainland Coast: Sport Catch for 1982 Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	57
29	Herring Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Annual Commercial Fishery Catch, 1974 to 1983 Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	62
30a	Shellfish Fishery of South Mainland Coast: Average Annual Commercial Catch of Major Species, 1975-1981, Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait Systems	67
30b	Recreational Shellfish Fishery of South Mainland Coast for 1981 Relative to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait System.	68

<u>Table</u>		<u>Page</u>
31	Minimum Duration to Generate Maximum Wave Heights for Craig Bay.	78
32	Minimum Fetch and Duration to Produce Fully Developed Seas at Various Wind Speeds	78
33	Maximum Depth of Sediment Disturbance due to Waves	91
34	Modified Mercalli Scale of Earthquake Intensities with Corresponding Richter Magnitudes	97
35	Seismic Amplification Factors for Different Geological Materials.	99
36	Representative Taxonomic Bird Groups Protected under the <u>Migratory Birds Convention Act</u>	115

5.1 INTRODUCTION

PURPOSE

The purpose of this report is to provide complementary information to the maps and tables of the Coastal Resources Folio.

THE STUDY AREA

The study area extends from Gibsons Landing in the south to the Redonda Islands in the north. The seaward boundary extends westward to the mid-point of the Strait of Georgia. The landward boundary extends to approximately the 150-metre elevation.

5.2 GENERAL SETTING

5.2.1 POPULATION

The study area covers all of the Powell River Regional District and parts of the Comox-Strathcona and Sunshine Coast Regional districts. Over 35,000 people inhabit the area (Table 1). Like other coastal regions of B.C., settlement has occurred in a linear strip along the coast. The Municipality of Powell River is the largest urban centre.

5.2.2 LABOUR FORCE

The Sunshine Coast Regional District

Hall, Strong and Associates (1980), document the Sunshine Coast region labour force prior to 1980. In 1979, labour force participation (the proportion of the labour force which is working) was low compared to other regional districts throughout the province. Hall, Strong and Associates (1980) attribute this to the large retirement population and the lack of female employment opportunities. The seasonal nature of tourism, fishing, and the semi-retired labour force are also thought to affect employment levels.

In 1981, the Sunshine Coast Regional District labour force was estimated at 6,960. Almost half of the labour force is employed in tertiary industries, of which community business and personal services provide the most jobs. Primary and secondary industries employ only 15%.

TABLE 1
POPULATION OF REGIONAL DISTRICTS
1981

<u>Sunshine Coast Regional District</u>		<u>Population</u>
Electoral area	a	1,846
	b	2,265
	c	2,690
	d	1,739
	e	1,926
	f	1,428
	Gibsons	2,609
	Sechelt	1,096
TOTAL		15,599
<u>Powell River Regional District</u>		<u>Population</u>
Electoral area	a	1,437
	b	1,149
	c	1,893
	d	1,146
	e	316
Powell River		13,423
TOTAL		19,364
<u>Comox-Strathcona Regional District</u>		<u>Population</u>
Cortes Island Electoral Area I		643
Redonda Islands ¹		100
TOTAL		743

Source: Statistics Canada, 1983. Census Data for 1981.

¹. Estimated population given by Comox-Strathcona Regional District.

Powell River Regional District

Boyer, Ladret, and Gillies (1977) provide an account of labour force characteristics in the Powell River region prior to 1977. In 1981, the regional district labour force was estimated at 8,990. About 40% of the labour force is employed in tertiary industries. Half of these employees are engaged in community, business and personal service occupations. Another third of the labour force is employed in manufacturing industries. The majority of them are employed at MacMillan Bloedel's wood processing operations at Powell River.

5.2.3 FORESTRY

The Resource Base

The study area covers approximately 242 000 hectares of land, of which about 220 000 hectares are classified as forest land. Immature timber accounts for 80% of the forested land, mature timber accounts for 15% and poor quality timber and stands of non-commercial value account for the remainder (Table 2). Crown land is composed of the Sechelt, Powell and Toba provincial forests, which are administered by the B.C. Forest Service. The Service also administers timber tenures in the Quadra timber supply area, which is composed of the Powell River, Sechelt and Jervis timber supply blocks. MacMillan Bloedel is the major private holder, operating Tree Farm Licence 39 and Tree Farms 47 and 19.

The Sunshine Coast

The B.C. Forest Service (1982) reported four shake and shingle mills and six sawmills in operation. The shake and shingle mills produced an estimated 19,336 thousand board feet (MBM) of shakes and shingles; the sawmills produced 1,859 MBM of lumber.

Logging operations employ between 330 and 390 people, the majority (about 300 on average) are employed by just four companies: B.C. Forest Products, Canadian Forest Products, Weldwood, and O.B. Jervis (Hall, Strong and Associates 1983).

Powell River Regional District

In 1982, six shake and shingle mills were in operation, four of which were reported to have produced 1750 MBM of shakes and shingles. Eight sawmills were in operation, seven of which produced 87,232 MBM of lumber. (B.C.F. 1982).

The MacMillan Bloedel pulp and paper mill is one of the largest in North America. The mill produced over 500,000 tonnes of newsprint, and 50,000 tonnes of air dried pulp in 1983. Also, 83 MBM of lumber were

TABLE 2
FOREST COVER CLASSES (IN HECTARES) FOR THE SUNSHINE COAST AND POWELL RIVER REGIONS

Base Maps	Immature	%	Mature	%	Residual	%	N.S.R.	%	N.C.	%	Total Forest	Non-Forest	Total Land
No. 1	45 413	80.4	7 313	15.1	438	.7	1 979	3.5	1 214	2.1	56 468	5 043	61 511
No. 2	26 648	77.7	5 531	16.1	1 063	30	1 034	30	29	.08	34 305	3 452	37 757
No. 3	49 934	88.2	5 130	9.0	939	1.7	605	1.1	7	.01	56 615		
No. 4	54 104	74.3	15 632	21.5	2 284	3.1	819	1.1	-		72 839	7 220	80 059
Total	176 099	80.0	33 717	15.3	4 724	2.1	4 437	2.0	1 250	.56	220 227	21 799	242 026

Source: B.C. Forest Service, 1983. Burnaby.

cut and dressed. The mill employs approximately 2,200 people. (MacMillan Bloedel, pers. comm. 1983).

Canadian Forest Products and Weldwood of Canada are the two main logging operators in the area; both companies, when active, employ about 80 people. (Marshall, Macklin, Monaghan, 1983).

5.2.4 FISHERIES

In 1980, 286 commercial fishing vessels were registered in the study area (Fisheries and Oceans, 1983). A total of 504 fishermen were employed on board these vessels. In 1981, there were nine fish processing plants in operation (Table 3). Table 4 lists the 1981 wholesale value of sea foods produced in the Sunshine Coast region.

5.2.5 AGRICULTURE

In 1981, 122 farms were operating and had a total capital value of \$24,719,186. (see Table 5a), with sales of \$792,950. in produce. Individually, the majority of the farms sold less than \$10,000 of produce, and were small holdings (under 28 hectares), that supplied local markets. (See Table 5b).

By April 1, 1980, 4 332 hectares of land in the Sunshine Coast Regional District and 10 813 hectares in the Powell River Regional District had been designated as Agricultural Land Reserve. (B.C. Agriculture, 1980).

TABLE 3
FISH PROCESSING PLANTS
SUNSHINE COAST - POWELL RIVER REGION
(1981)

Name	Location	Products
Suncoast Salmon Ltd.	Sechelt	Salmon
Sunshine Coast Oyster	Sechelt	Oysters
Tyee Products Ltd.	Sechelt	Bait
Totem Oyster Co.	Egmont	Oysters
Harmony Sea Foods Ltd.	Egmont	Oysters and clams
Seaman Hope Fisheries	Egmont	Oysters, Clams, mussels
Westview Fisheries Ltd.	Powell River	Salmon, groundfish, prawns, geoducks
Sliammon Indian Seafoods	Powell River	Salmon, herring, groundfish, oysters, clams
Tidal Rush Marine Farms Ltd.	Powell River	Salmon

SOURCE: British Columbia, Ministry of the Environment, Marine Resources Branch. 1982. Trevor Proverbs, personal communication.

TABLE 4

WHOLESALE VALUE OF SEAFOOD PRODUCTION IN COMPARISON TO PROVINCIAL TOTALS

	Vancouver		Vancouver Island		Sunshine Coast ¹		Central & North Coast		Total B.C.
Product	\$ Value	% of B.C. Total Fish Value	\$ Value	% of B.C. Total Fish Value	\$ Value	% of B.C. Total Fish Value	\$ Value	% of B.C. Total Fish Value	\$ Value
Fresh Dressed Salmon	4,858,309	74.4	1,238,729	18.9	292,424	4.4	141,373	2.2	6,530,835.
Little Neck Clams	73,203	21.4	256,048	75.	12,078	3.5	-	-	341,329.
Oysters--fresh	-	-	1,089,682	84.6	197,473	15.3	-	-	1,287,155.
Prawns(frozen)	640,215	59.9	12,552	1.2	371,314	34.7	44,401	4.1	1,068,482 .
Geoduck Clams meat--frozen	15,923	97.6	-	-	382	2.3	-	-	16,305.
Geoduck Clams neck meat	1,570,414	60.4	934,781	36.0	92,626	3.6	-	-	2,597,821.
Horse Clams	19,024	43.0	15,286	34.6	9,909	22.4	-	-	44,219.
Herring--bait fresh & frozen	389,028	26.3	641,429	43.3	67,147	4.5	382,758	25.8	1,480,362.
Herring Roe mature	42,408,998	61.02	7,383,245	10.6	21,350	3.0	19,682,348	28.3	69,495,941.
TOTAL	49,975,114	60.3	11,571,752	13.9	1,064,703	1.3	20,250,880	24.4	82,862,449

1. The Sunshine Coast region incorporates the Sunshine Coast and Powell River regional districts plus part of the Comox-Strathcona Regional District.

Source: B.C. Ministry of the Environment, Marine Resources Branch. 1982.

TABLE 5a

NUMBER OF FARMS AND REVENUE

	Powell River	Sunshine Coast
Total number of farms	66	56
Total capital value	\$13,493,748.	\$11,325,438.
Farm Revenue	\$ 433,535.	\$ 359,415.

Source: Statistics Canada, 1983. Agricultural Census of Canada - Catalogue 96-11.

TABLE 5b

FARM SIZE

	Powell River	Sunshine Coast	Total
Under 3 acres (1.2 ha) improved	21	11	32
3-9 acres (1.2-3.6 ha) improved	19	27	46
10-69 acres (4.0-27.9 ha) improved	25	15	40
70-129 acres (28.3- 52.2 ha) improved	1	3	4

Source: Statistics Canada. 1983. Agricultural Census of Canada - Catalogue 96-911.

5.2.6 MINING

Construction Aggregates Ltd. and Canadian Forest Products are the two main operators in the area: Construction Aggregates exports mostly to the Lower Mainland and sends smaller quantities to Vancouver Island, the North Coast and Alaska (Hall, Strong and Associates, 1980).

Four limestone quarries were in operation on Texada Island in 1982, employing a total of 111 persons. These quarries produce about three million tonnes annually, and are considered to be the largest and most important in the province (Marshall, Macklin and Monaghan, 1983).

5.2.7 TOURISM

The Sunshine Coast is a popular vacation area of British Columbia due to its scenic beauty and outdoor recreation opportunities. The Powell River area not only provides a variety of recreation resources, but also serves as a gateway for many boaters travelling to northern locations; Desolation Sound and adjacent islands and inlets are favourite destinations.

5.3 PHYSICAL FEATURES

5.3.1 PHYSIOGRAPHY

The study area's physiography is the result of repeated glacial and interglacial events of the Wisconsin period; the most recent of which was the Fraser Glaciation (see Figure 1). The lowlands of the study area were submerged for most of this period (Hora and Basham, 1980). Upon deglaciation, the land rose relative to the sea which, for the study area, meant an elevation change of up to 180 metres. Figures 2 and 3 summarize the areas of marine overlap and elevation change for coastal British Columbia. The coastal lowlands bordering the Strait of Georgia are clearly evident in Figure 2.

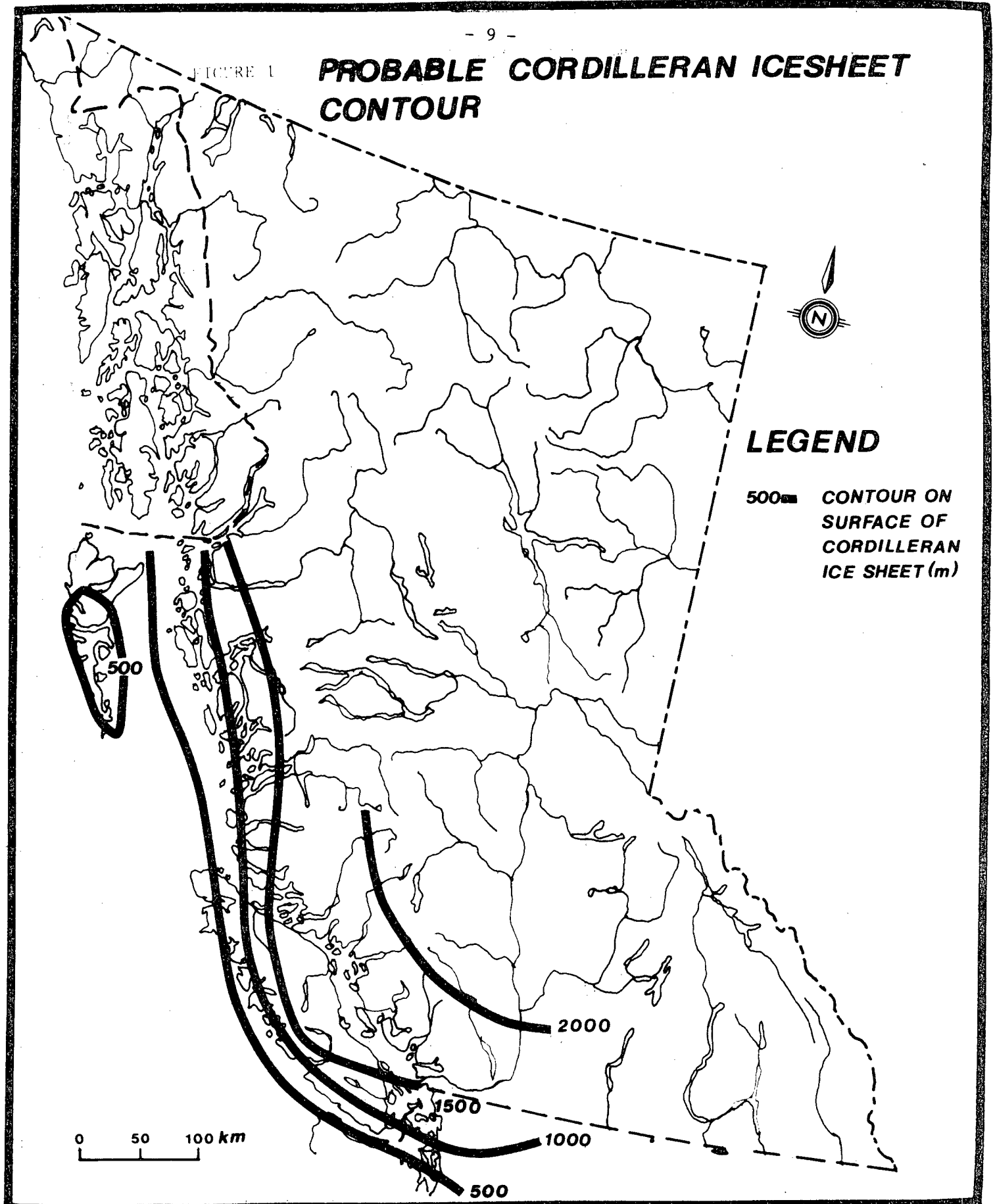
More specifically, the study area falls within the eastern section of the Georgia Depression, an extensive northwest-southeast coastal trough stretching from Alaska to the Gulf of California (Barker, 1974). The marine component is represented by the Strait of Georgia and contiguous channels. The terrestrial component is represented by the Georgia Lowland and adjacent Coast Mountains.

The Strait of Georgia and Adjacent Channels

The Strait of Georgia is a semi-enclosed body of water approximately 220 kilometres (km) long with an average width of 33 km. Its mean depth is 157 metres (m) with a maximum depth of 425 m near Texada Island.

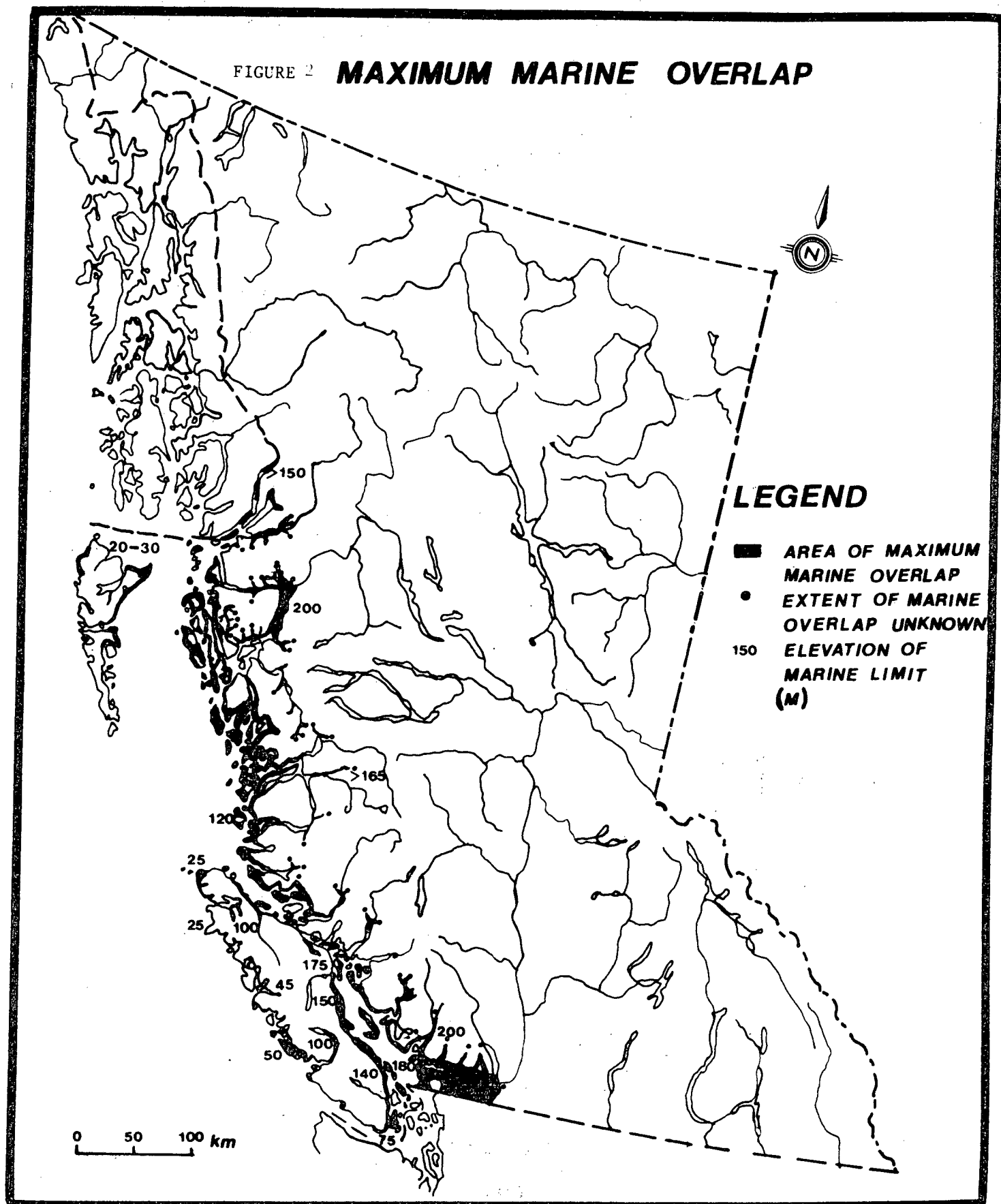
FIGURE 1

PROBABLE CORDILLERAN ICESHEET CONTOUR



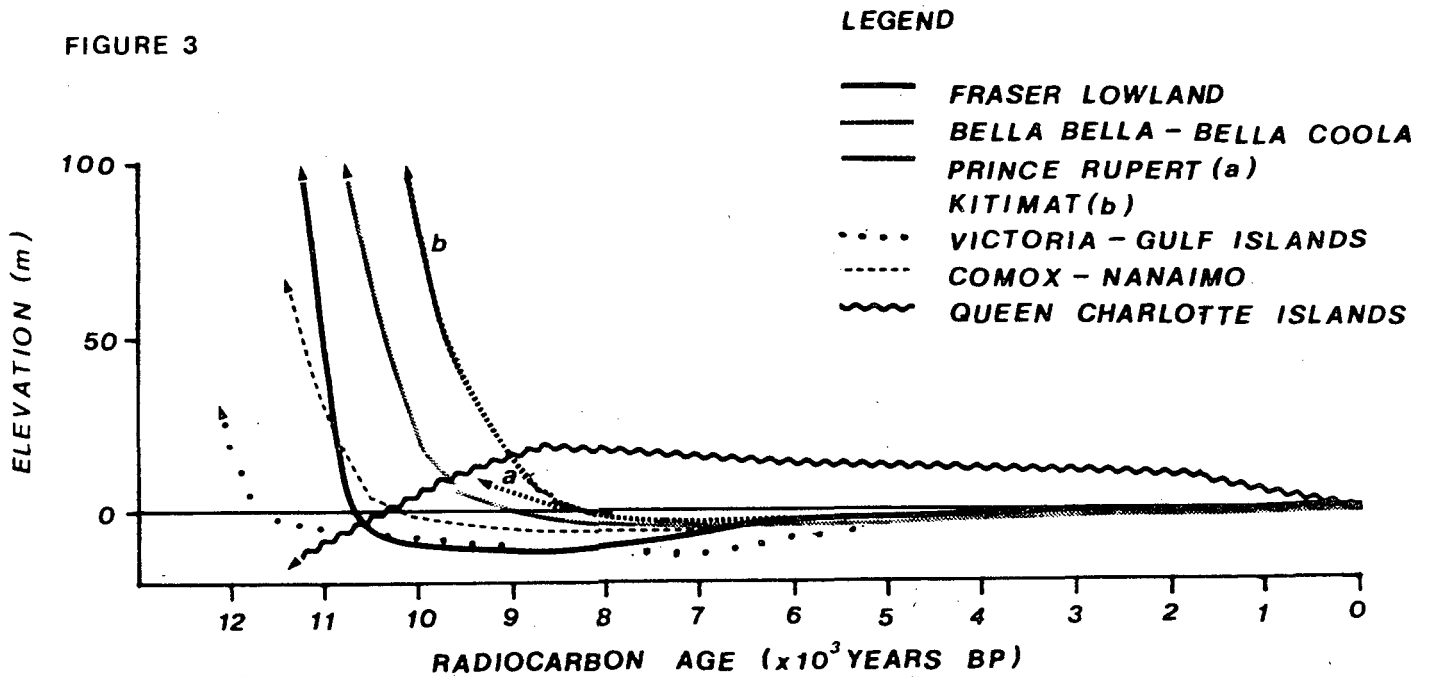
SOURCE: J.J. Clague, J.R. Harper, R.J. Hebda and D.E. Howes, 1982. Later Quaternary Sea Levels and Crustal Movements, Coastal British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, 19(3). Ottawa.

FIGURE 2 **MAXIMUM MARINE OVERLAP**



SOURCE: J.J. Clague, 1981. Late Quaternary Geology and Geochronology of British Columbia: Part 2 - Summary and Discussion of Radio Carbon-Dated Quaternary History. GSC Paper 80-35. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. Ottawa.

FIGURE 3



SUMMARY OF OBSERVED RELATIVE SEA-LEVEL CHANGES IN BRITISH COLUMBIA

SOURCE: J.J. Clague, J.R. Harper, R.J. Hebda, and D.E. Howes, 1982. Late Quaternary Sea Levels and Crustal Movements, Coastal British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences. Volume 19 (3). Ottawa.

The submarine topography of the eastern strait, a series of shallow banks and ridges separated by deep basins and troughs, is generally parallel to the strait axis. These bottom characteristics are a result of the glacial history and recent deposition processes of the region (Clague, 1975). See also the Submarine Topography (1:50,000) map series of this folio.

The channels of the study area, while subject to the same processes, exhibit features characteristic of fjords;

- a) They are narrow, commonly under five kilometres in width;
- b) They are steep-walled;
- c) They are very deep with maximums of greater than 700 metres;
- d) They have, in some instances, relatively shallow sills in their lower reaches.

The Georgia Lowland

The Georgia Lowland is of variable width, 5 to 20 km, extending from Sayward south to the Fraser Lowland (Leaming, 1968). It includes Quadra, Texada, Cortes, Lasqueti, Nelson, and the smaller islands of the eastern Strait of Georgia. The lowland features are a result of glacial and marine processes and are characterized by gently sloping, low surface relief. The inland boundary approximates the 600 m contour (Clague and Bornhold, 1980).

5.3.2 GEOLOGY

The glaciers of the last major ice advance began retreating about 15,000 years before present (B.P.) and reached their present extent by about 9500 years B.P. (Clague, 1981). Above 300 m elevation, bare bedrock or veneers of glacial deposits were left, while below that elevation thick deposits of materials derived from glacial, glacio-marine, marine and fluvial processes occur (McCammon, 1977).

Bedrock

The study area is primarily plutonic rock (metamorphic) of unknown age. Granodiorite and quartz diorite dominate this complex. Notable exceptions are Texada and Lasqueti islands, which are primarily basalts and lavas of the Upper Triassic period. Of economic interest are the Triassic limestone rocks on Texada Island.

The most recent generalized mapping of the bedrock geology is found in Roddick et al (1979).

Surficial Geology

The unconsolidated surficial materials are primarily of glacial or inter-glacial origin, some of these have been further modified by such marine and fluvial processes as sea-level changes and glacial meltwater. Modern sediments in the study area are represented by channel, floodplain, alluvial fan, deltaic and beach deposits. Colluvial, landslide, and till veneer deposits dominate the mountainous and steep-sloped parts of the study area, while organic deposits have developed in poorly drained depressional areas and at lake margins. The Georgia Lowland is extensively overlain by glacial till of variable texture, depth and surface expression. Below 180 m elevation, the surface has been reworked and modified by marine and glaciomarine processes.

Glaciofluvial land forms, such as terraces, abandoned channels and ice-contact fans are also present, though more abundant in the southern part of the study area.

Spectacular eroding coastal bluffs within the region are predominantly exposures of the interglacial outwash deposit called Quadra sand. It is generally overlain by a till layer with a marine deposit at the surface. Notable examples of these bluff formations are found on North Thormanby, Savary, Hernando and Marina islands.

Accounts of the glacial history, stratigraphy and textures of surficial deposits can be found in Clague (1976) and (1981); surficial geology and stratigraphy has been mapped by McCammon (1977) and Clague (1976); and textural analysis and observed stratigraphy are available in Leaming (1966), McCammon (1977), and Hora and Basham (1980). Reconnaissance terrain inventory mapping has been done for the study area by the British Columbia Ministry of Environment (1980).

5.3.3 SOILS

Soils of the study region are predominantly those of the Brunosolic and Podzolic orders.

Dystric Brunisol soils are found primarily in the south (Gibson's Landing to Sechelt). These soils occur on relatively young geologic sediments and are thought to be in a transitional stage of development. The soil temperature class is mild mesic with a semi-arid moisture regime. The high moisture deficit, dry summer and warm temperatures of the region lead to little chemical transformation which is characteristic of rapidly drained soils. Vegetation provides a thick, poorly decomposed surface layer with little incorporation of organic matter into the mineral soil.

North of Sechelt, humo-ferric podzols predominate. These soils have developed on permeable, coarse-textured glacial till or colluvium parent materials. The soil temperature is mild mesic cool boreal, with a humid soil moisture regime. Similar to Dystric Brunisols, vegetation provides a thick organic surface layer that is acidic and poorly decomposed.

Steep slopes tend to have shallow, coarse textured and rapidly drained soils; bedrock outcrops are common. Less steep terrain has sandy to gravelly soils with rapid to imperfect drainage. Gently sloping, low-lying positions have medium to fine textured soils subject to water table fluctuations. Depressional or level areas generally have organic deposits. Glacio-marine and glacio-fluvial deposits (especially terraces) have coarse textured, and very rapidly drained soils on moderate slopes (Frank, 1980).

There appears to be no mapped soils information for the study area. For a general account see Valentine, et al (1978).

5.3.4 CLIMATE

Temperature and Precipitation

The Georgia Lowland and adjacent islands fall within a relatively homogeneous climatic zone. Annual mean temperatures range from 8.8°C at Powell River airport to 10.5°C at Merry Island. Temperature extremes range between -18°C to -11°C for lows, while the extreme highs are between 30°C and 36°C (Atmospheric Environment Service, 1983). Rainfall is variable throughout the region with a maximum observed mean annual total of 1359 mm at Gower Point while the minimum observed mean annual total was 929 mm on the northwest coast of Texada Island. Increased values would be expected for higher elevations or more inland locations. Port Mellon, slightly inland of the study area, has an annual average of 3110 mm. The majority of this precipitation occurs during late fall and winter months.

Wind Patterns

Wind patterns for the area are controlled by two major factors:

- a) the seasonally dominant atmospheric pressure systems;
- b) the major topographic features of southwestern British Columbia;

The northwest-southeast orientation of the Vancouver Island and Coast Mountains forces surface winds to blow in either of these two directions. In winter, the Aleutian Low dominates atmospheric circulation over the northeastern Pacific Ocean, southeasterly winds prevail. An Arctic High in the Interior of the province, however, results in strong northeasterly outflow winds down the inlets and valleys to the coast. In summer the Pacific High dominates. Consequently, the prevailing winds are westerly to

northwesterly. The summer pattern is complicated by onshore-offshore winds created by diurnal temperature gradients between the land and water (Schaefer, 1983 pers. comm.).

5.3.5 PHYSICAL OCEANOGRAPHY

Tides

The tidal wave enters the Strait of Georgia via Juan de Fuca Strait and reflects off the north end of the strait, producing a standing wave and a south to north increase in tidal range (Thomson, 1981). The tides range from a 3-metre maximum and a 2-metre mean in southern waters to more than a 5-metre maximum and a 4-metre mean in northern waters. In the Strait of Georgia, the time difference between corresponding tidal heights at any point and Point Atkinson never exceeds 30 minutes. Tides are mixed, mainly semi-diurnal.

Flood tides from the north take about three hours longer to enter the northern Strait of Georgia than do the southern tidal currents. This can create differences in water elevation in passages of up to one metre, thus generating strong currents (Giovando, 1977).

Currents

Waldichuk (1957) divided the Strait of Georgia into northern, central and southern areas based on surface current regime.

Northern

The northern region extends to the southern tips of Texada and Lasqueti islands. The tidal currents are weak (to 10 cm/sec), and highly variable. Speeds rarely exceed one knot, although they may be faster in some channels. Wind-driven currents are also weak, even during strong winter winds, due to the absence of stratification. A counter clockwise drift around the northern part of the Strait has been postulated.

Central

The central region stretches from Texada and Lasqueti islands south to a line joining Point Roberts and the Saanich Peninsula.

The tidal currents are stronger and have a distinct southeast-northwest ebb and flood respectively. The Fraser River, especially during peak run-off, strongly influences this section of the Strait. The upper layer exhibits complex movements under the influence of wind, tides and Coriolis force.

Southern

The tidal currents are stronger and typically greater than one knot. The narrow passages allow tidal mixing. Wind driven currents are significant during summer months when the Fraser River plume extends to this area.

Waves

The Strait of Georgia is fetch and wind duration limited for developing large sea waves (McCann and Hale, 1980). During storm situations, though, fetch and width limitations would be the principal controlling factors (Hale and McCann, 1982). Winds blowing along the axis of the strait can generate waves up to 3 m in open water (Owens, 1977, Hale and McCann, 1982). There is a higher probability of this occurring during winter months than at any other time of the year.

5.3.6 WATER RESOURCES

Hydrology

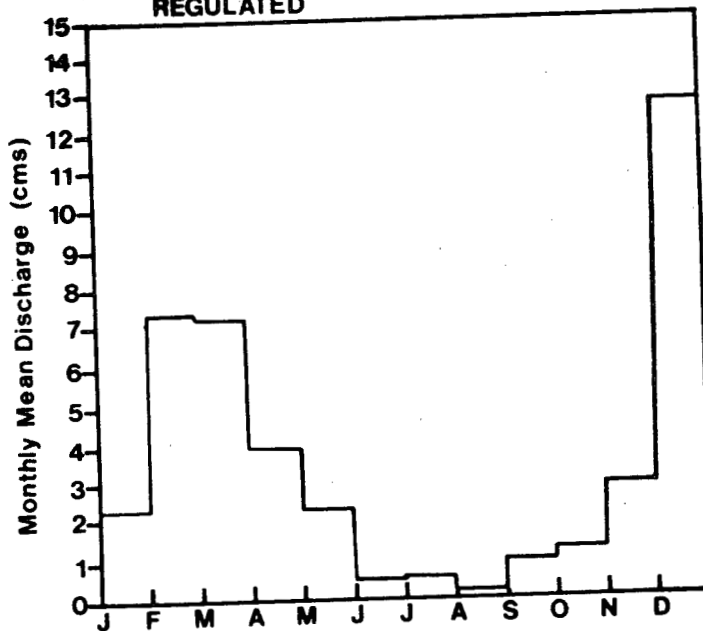
The study area has a number of freshwater rivers, lakes, and wetlands. Most, however, are characteristically small. Although a snow pack accumulates in the mountain ranges during winter, precipitation in the Georgia Lowland region falls mainly as rain. Consequently, freshet occurs in mid-winter (December and January) when rainfall is greatest. Hydrographs for Lang and Roberts creeks exhibit this trend (Figures 4 and 5). Rivers that are also fed by snowmelt streams exhibit a second peak discharge in late spring. The low flow period occurs during late August and September when some streams are dry or have sub-surface or base flows.

The Georgia Lowland region experiences annual moisture deficits of between 122 mm to 170 mm (see Figures 6, 7, and 8).

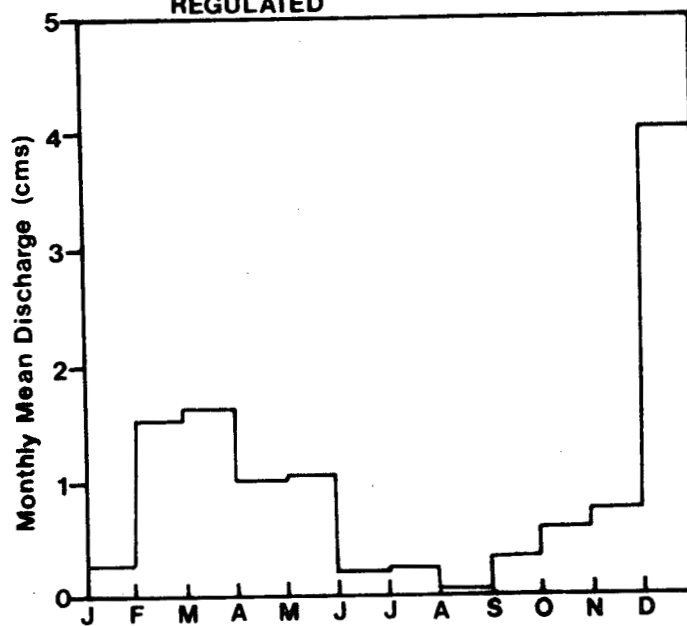
Water Quality

Domestic sewage and industrial effluents are the major contaminants of marine and freshwaters of the study region. Sewage outfalls, septic tanks, and wastes from vessel contribute nutrients and coliform bacteria, while several industrial and commercial outfalls add poisons, metals, and heat. Although most marine waters are relatively well flushed by tidal action, water quality in many nearshore areas is, or is suspected to be, below the standards set for shellfish harvesting and water contact recreation. Certain land use and waste disposal practices adjacent to estuaries, coastal freshwater lakes and rivers similarly contribute to the reduced quality of these water bodies.

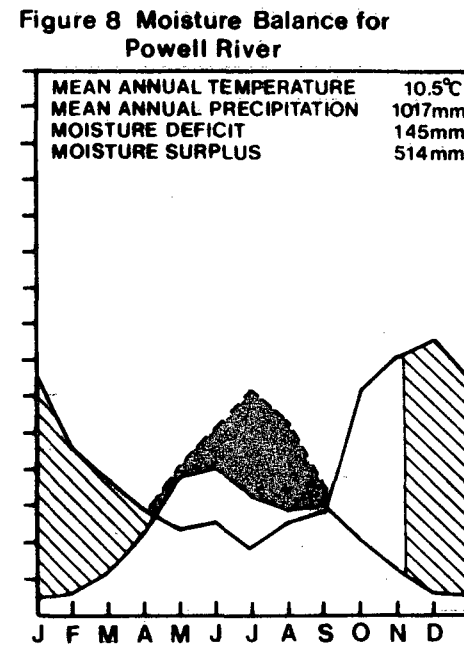
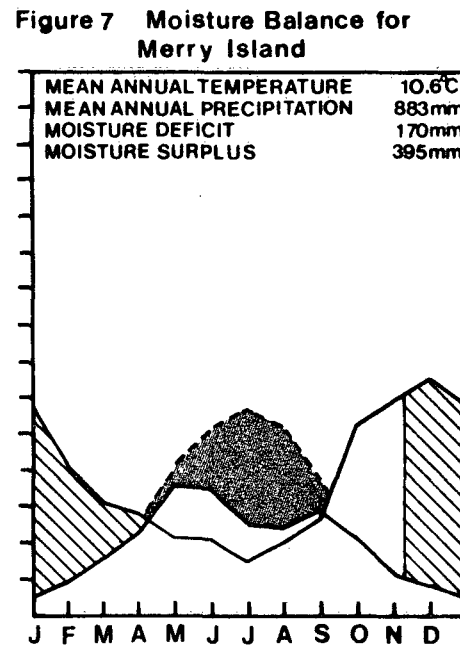
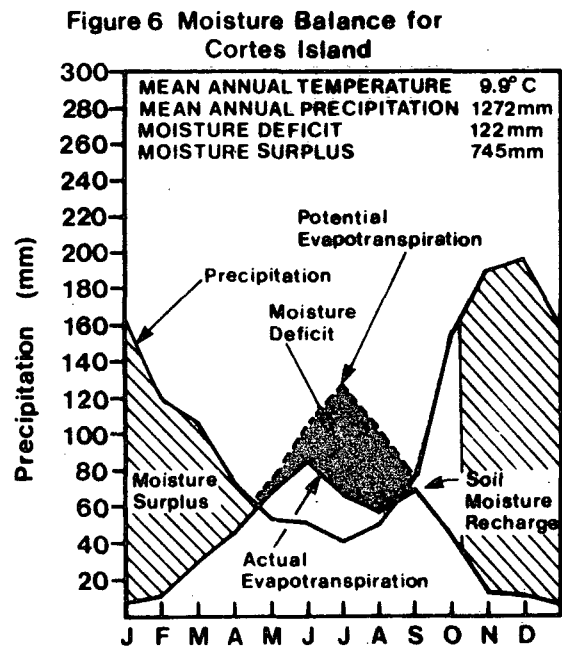
**FIGURE 4 : HYDROGRAPH FOR LANG CREEK
STATION No. 08GB007
REGULATED**



**FIGURE 5 : HYDROGRAPH FOR ROBERTS CREEK
STATION No. 08GA047
REGULATED**



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Environment, 1981. Historical Streamflow Summaries. Inland Waters Directorate. Ottawa.



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Environment, 1983. Moisture Balance Data. Atmospheric Environment Service. Vancouver.

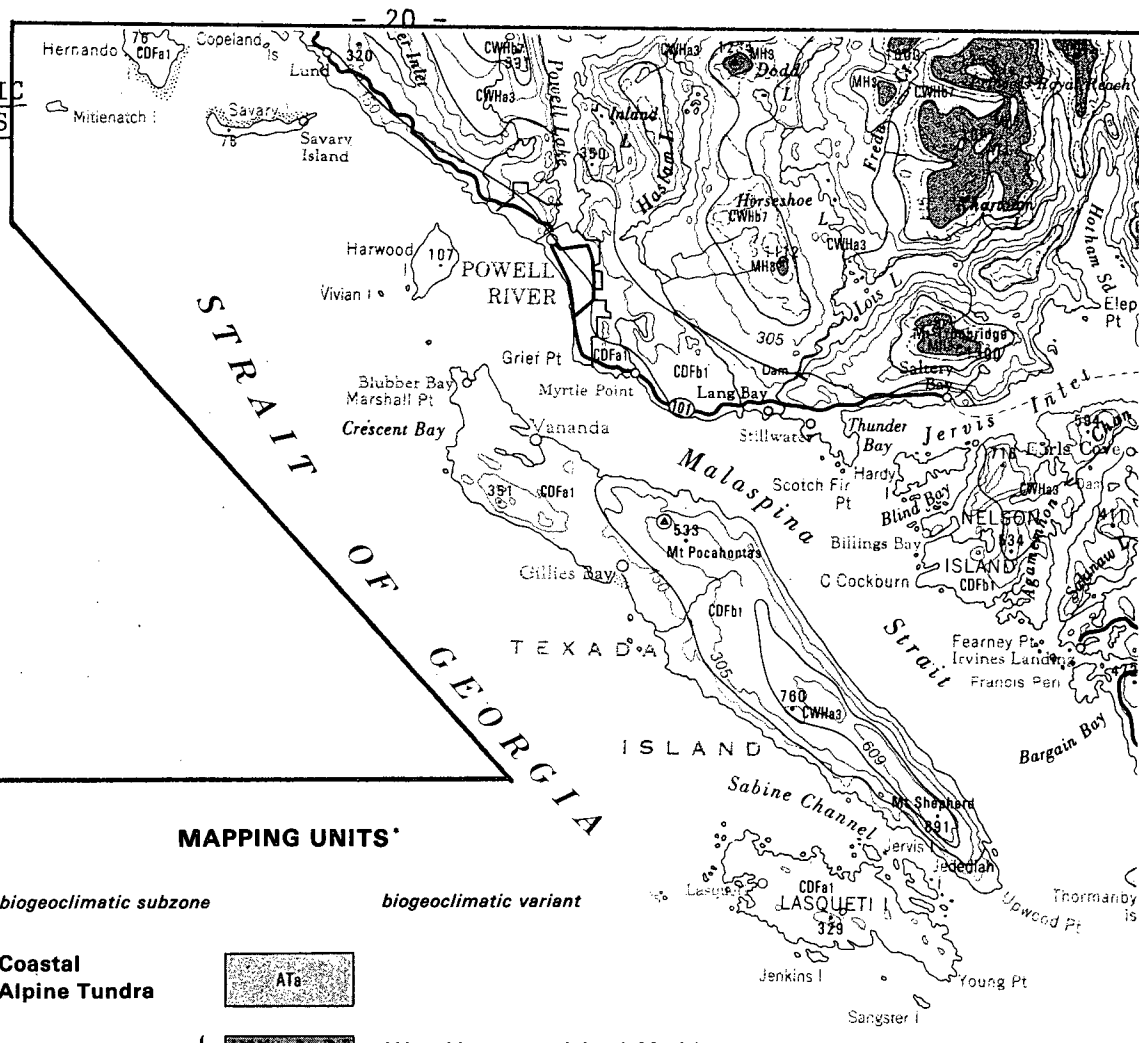
5.4.1 TERRESTRIAL VEGETATION

- . Coastal Douglas Fir Zone - dry subzone (Garry oak - Douglas fir)
 - wet subzone (Madrona-Douglas fir)
- . Coastal Western Hemlock Zone - drier subzone (Douglas fir-western Hemlock)
 - wetter subzone (Pacific silver fir-western Hemlock)

- . Coastal Douglas Fir Zone - Drier Maritime - Nanaimo + Georgia Drier
Coastal Douglas Fir
- Wetter Maritime - Nanaimo + Georgia Wetter
Coastal Douglas Fir Maritime
- . Coastal Western Hemlock Zone - Drier Maritime Coastal - Pacific Ranges
Western Hemlock Maritime Coastal
Western Hemlock
- Wetter Maritime Coastal - Pacific Ranges Montane
Western Hemlock Wetter Maritime
Coastal Western Hemlock
- . Montane Hemlock Zone - Maritime Forested & - Pacific Ranges Maritime
Parkland Montane Hemlock Forested & Parkland Montane
Hemlock

The climatic description, characteristic combinations of species, and a schematic profile of the eastern Strait of Georgia are illustrated in Tables 6, 7, and Figure 10 respectively. A synopsis of some components of these biogeoclimatic zones is also provided by Krajina, Klinka, and Worrall (1982) (Table 8a); and their climatic data, for comparative purposes, are listed in Tables 8b and c. Further data provided by these researchers indicate that this region exhibits one of the highest tree species diversity (25 to 34 species) found anywhere within the province.

FIGURE 9 BIOGEOCLIMATIC
ZONES OF PARTS
OF THE STUDY
AREA



SOURCE: See Table 6

MAPPING UNITS*

biogeoclimatic zone	biogeoclimatic subzone	biogeoclimatic variant
Alpine Tundra (AT)	Coastal Alpine Tundra	Ata
Mountain Hemlock (MH)	Maritime Forested and Parkland Mountain Hemlock	MH1
		MH2
		MH3
Coastal Douglas-fir (CDF)	Drier Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir	CDFa1
	Wetter Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir	CDFb1
Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH)	Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	CWHa1
		CWHa2
		CWHa3
	Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	CWHb1,2
		CWHb3
		CWHb4
		CWHb5
		CWHb7
		CWHb7

West Vancouver Island Maritime Forested and Parkland Mountain Hemlock

East Vancouver Island Maritime Forested and Parkland Mountain Hemlock

Pacific Ranges Maritime Forested and Parkland Mountain Hemlock

Nanaimo and Georgia Drier Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir

Nanaimo and Georgia Wetter Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir

West Vancouver Island Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

East Vancouver Island Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

Pacific Ranges Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

Estevan and West Vancouver Island Submontane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

West Vancouver Island Montane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

East Vancouver Island Submontane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

East Vancouver Island Montane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

Pacific Ranges Montane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock

* Ecosystems were mapped at the level of biogeoclimatic variant. Mapping units may have up to 15% of their area composed of adjacent biogeoclimatic variants. Due to the pattern of distribution and relatively small map scale, subzones of the Mountain Hemlock Zone and the Estevan and the West Vancouver Island Submontane

Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock variants were mapped as composite mapping units

Table 6:
CLIMATIC CHARACTERISTICS⁽¹⁾

Means (upper figures) and standard deviations (lower figures) of differentiating climatic characteristics for subzones and variants of the CDF, CWH and MH zones

biogeoclimatic units		climate (Köppen-Trewartha)	mean annual precipitation	mean temperature of the coldest month	index of continentality	mean radiation during growing season	mean precipitation April-September	mean temperature of the warmest month	accumulated degree days over 5.6 °C	frost free period	mean precipitation of the driest month	mean precipitation of the wettest month	annual mean precipitation	number of months with mean temperature >10 °C	number of months with mean temperature <0 °C	water surplus	water deficit	number of months with water deficit	maximum snow depth	number of months with snow	potential evapotranspiration	actual evapotranspiration	actual/potential evapotranspiration	actual evapotranspiration April-September
			mm	°C	Ly	mm	°C	days	mm	mm	°C	mm	mm	°C	mm	mm	mm	cm	mm	mm	%	mm		
MOUNTAIN HEMLOCK ZONE	Maritime Forested Mountain Hemlock ⁽²⁾	milder Dfc	3339 1248	-3.3 1.6	9 8	40100 1780	782 342	9.9 1.9	392 196	127 18	115 188	522 172	3.2 0.5	1.1 1.0	4.5 0.8	2998 1239	27 43	0.8 0.9	261 78	7.3 0.9	378 26	348 29	93 11	340 31
	Maritime Parkland Mountain Hemlock ⁽²⁾	colder Dfc	3358 1435	-5.0 2.0	11 8	39500 1590	755 397	8.9 1.5	280 133	139 25	78 48	532 200	1.7 0.5	0.3 0.5	5.1 0.8	3087 1409	3 6	0.2 0.4	361 138	8.4 0.5	272 22	269 19	99 2	269 19
COASTAL DOUGLAS- FIR ZONE	Drier Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir ⁽³⁾	drier Csb	907 140	3.2 0.7	11 3	45700 2510	214 52	17.1 1.0	1753 131	253 37	22 8	152 24	10.0 0.4	5.8 0.5	0.0 0.0	543 111	288 70	4.0 0.7	0.9 2.0	0.2 0.4	632 38	384 42	58 9	311 49
	Wetter Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir	wetter Csb	1202 233	2.0 1.1	13 4	43000 1430	279 52	18.6 1.1	1578 185	217 24	28 7	197 43	9.1 0.7	5.2 0.7	0.0 0.0	786 223	181 35	3.4 0.7	1.0 1.1	1.0 1.0	583 19	405 38	69 5	358 40
COASTAL WESTERN HEMLOCK ZONE	Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock ⁽²⁾	drier Cfb	1867 269	1.4 0.9	15 5	40800 2030	488 88	17.3 1.1	1700 205	211 19	48 11	201 54	8.4 0.8	5.4 0.5	0.0 0.0	1383 278	72 47	1.8 0.7	1.9 1.7	1.4 1.0	558 20	483 41	87 8	440 39
	Pacific Ranges Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock		1785 232	1.8 0.8	14 4	39800 1580	496 59	17.5 0.8	1769 184	218 17	50 10	267 40	8.7 0.6	5.8 0.5	0.0 0.0	1279 214	45 26	1.6 0.8	1.2 1.0	1.0 0.8	551 19	505 28	92 5	459 30
	Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock ⁽²⁾	wetter Cfb/c	3038 1048	0.8 2.6	6 7	40200 1490	713 282	12.9 1.9	938 338	193 42	74 30	461 130	6.7 1.7	3.4 1.7	0.8 1.2	2535 897	35 57	0.8 1.2	80 71	3.7 2.5	489 38	455 85	93 11	428 53

(1) Characteristics derived by discriminant analysis from 138 observations, with 32 variables each, from all the climatic stations located within the coastal area of the Vancouver Forest Region. Data supplied by the Climate Division, Resource Analysis Branch, Ministry of the Environment
The discriminant analysis incorporated observed as well as predicted data. Climatic data for the Alpine Tundra Zone were not available from a sufficient number of stations to justify inclusion in the analysis

(2) Differentiating climatic characteristics are not presented for the West Vancouver Island Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock, Pacific Ranges Montane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock and Pacific Ranges Maritime Forested Mountain Hemlock variants due to the lack of climatic data

(3) A single variant has been recognized in each of these two subzones on this map sheet. The differentiating climatic characteristics for the subzones, therefore, also differentiate between the variants

SOURCE: K. Klinka, F.C. Nuszdorfer and L. Skoda, 1979. Biogeoclimatic Units of Central and Southern Vancouver Island. British Columbia, Ministry of Forestry. Victoria.

Table 7:
CHARACTERISTIC COMBINATIONS OF SPECIES ⁽¹⁾

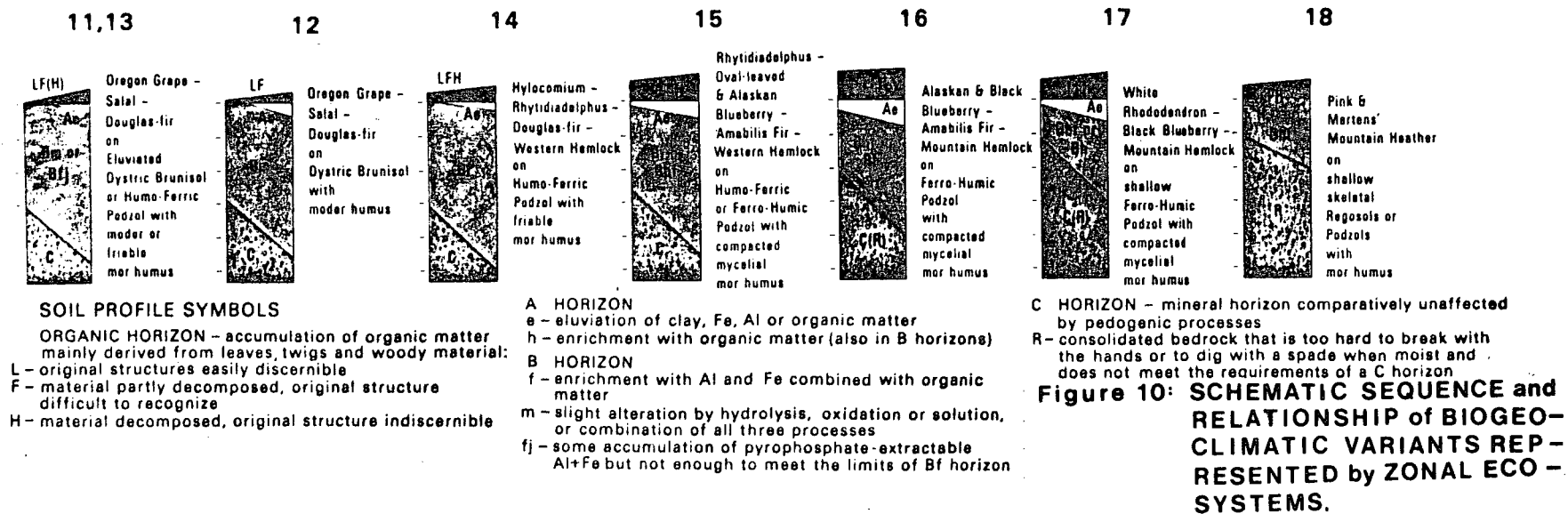
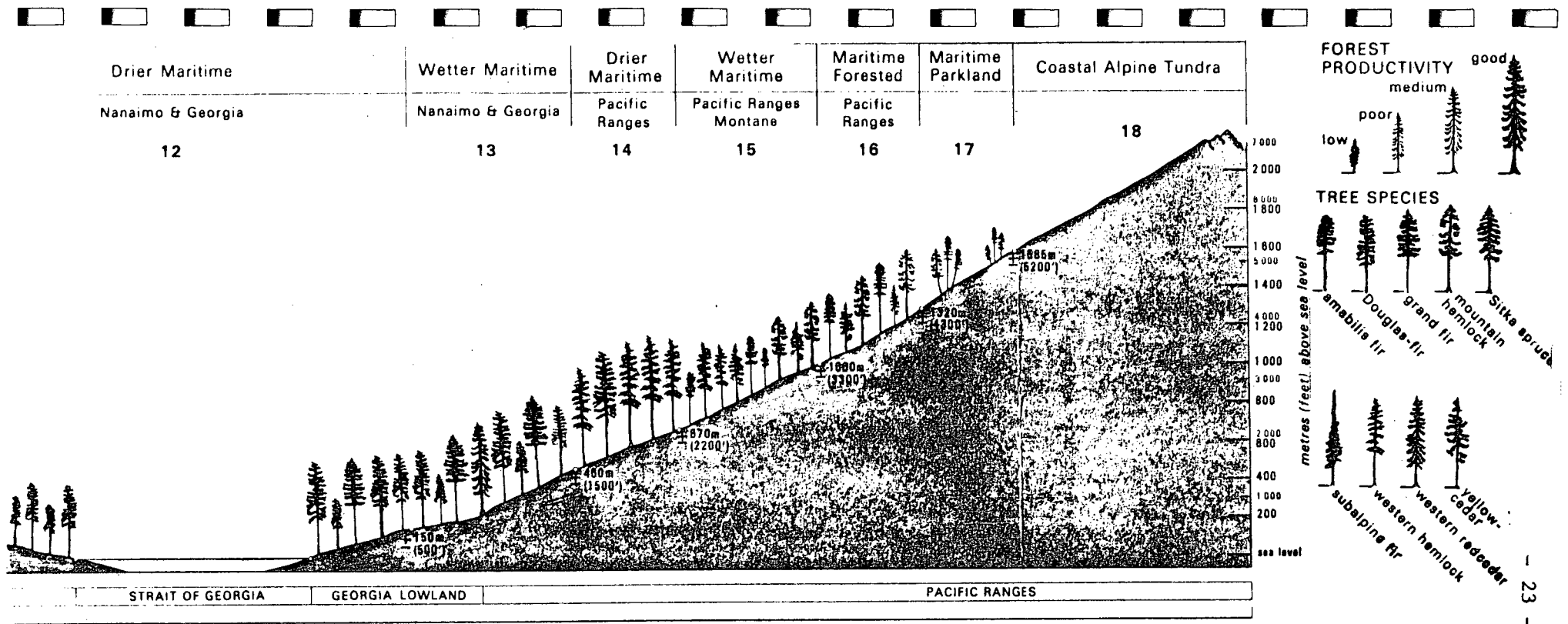
zone		subzone (2)		variant (2)	
Alpine Tundra	On this sheet a single subzone is recognized in this zone. Thus, the characteristic combination of species for the subzone is identical to that for the zone	Coastal Alpine Tundra	<i>Cassiope mertensiana</i> <i>Cassiope tetragona</i> <i>Luiseleuria procumbens</i>	<i>Luetkea pectinata</i> <i>Lycopodium alpinum</i> <i>Lycopodium sitchense</i>	<i>Phyllodoce empetriformis</i> <i>Cetraria subalpina</i>
Mountain Hemlock	<i>Abies amabilis</i> <i>Chamaecyparis nootkatensis</i> <i>Tsuga mertensiana</i> <i>Menziesia ferruginea</i> (<i>Vaccinium membranaceum</i>) ⁽¹⁾ <i>Athyrium distentifolium</i> * ⁽³⁾ (<i>Lycopodium annotinum</i>) (<i>Polystichum lonchitis</i> *) (<i>Rubus pedatus</i>) <i>Orthocaulis floerkii</i> <i>Pseudolaskea baileyi</i> <i>Rhytidiopsis robusta</i>	Maritime Forested Mountain Hemlock	(<i>Tsuga heterophylla</i>) <i>Vaccinium alaskaense</i> (<i>Blechnum spicant</i>) (<i>Clintonia uniflora</i>) (<i>Streptopus streptopoides</i>) (<i>Tiarella unifoliata</i> *) <i>Dicranum pallidisetum</i> <i>Rhizomnium nudum</i>	Pacific Ranges Maritime Forested Mountain Hemlock	<i>Cladothamnus pyroliflorus</i> (<i>Caltha biflora</i> *) (<i>Lonicera utahensis</i> *) (<i>Rhododendron albiflorum</i> *)
		Maritime Parkland Mountain Hemlock	(<i>Cassiope mertensiana</i>) <i>Gaultheria humifusa</i> (<i>Phyllodoce empetriformis</i>)	(<i>Rhododendron albiflorum</i>) <i>Vaccinium deliciosum</i> <i>Carex nigricans</i> *	<i>Luetkea pectinata</i>
Coastal Douglas-fir	<i>Abies grandis</i> <i>Arbutus menziesii</i> <i>Cornus nuttallii</i> <i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i> (<i>Amelanchier alnifolia</i>) (<i>Apocynum androsaemifolium</i> *) <i>Arctostaphylos columbiana</i> * <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> <i>Holodiscus discolor</i> (<i>Juniperus scopulorum</i> *) <i>Mahonia aquifolium</i> * <i>Mahonia nervosa</i> <i>Oemleria cerasiformis</i> * <i>Ribes lobbii</i>	Drier Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir	<i>Quercus garryana</i> * <i>Lonicera hispidula</i> <i>Brodiaea coronaria</i> * <i>Bromus carinatus</i> <i>Camassia leichtlinii</i> * <i>Camassia quamash</i> * <i>Carex pensylvanica</i> * <i>Claytonia perfoliata</i>	<i>Collinsia grandiflora</i> <i>Danthonia californica</i> * <i>Dodecatheon hendersonii</i> <i>Erythronium oregonum</i> <i>Galium aparine</i> <i>Lomatium utriculatum</i> * <i>Mimulus alsinoides</i> * <i>Nemophila parviflora</i>	<i>Poa bulbosa</i> * <i>Sanicula crassicaulis</i> <i>Sisyrinchium douglasii</i> * <i>Vulpia microstachys</i> *
		Wetter Maritime Coastal Douglas-fir	(<i>Tsuga heterophylla</i>) (<i>Paxistima myrsinites</i>) (<i>Carex rossii</i> *) (<i>Chimaphila menziesii</i>) <i>Hemitomes congestum</i>	(<i>Hypopitys monotropa</i>) (<i>Listera cordata</i>) (<i>Pyrola picta</i>) (<i>Smilacina stellata</i>)	A single variant is recognized in each subzone of the CDF Zone on this map sheet. Therefore, characteristic combinations of species for the variants are identical to those for the subzones
Coastal Western Hemlock	<i>Tsuga heterophylla</i> (<i>Menziesia ferruginea</i>) (<i>Oplopanax horridus</i> *) <i>Blechnum spicant</i> <i>Cornus canadensis</i> <i>Dryopteris austriaca</i> <i>Bazzania ambigua</i> <i>Bazzania denudata</i> <i>Bazzania tricenata</i> <i>Isoetes elegans</i> <i>Isoetes stoloniferum</i> <i>Plagiothecium undulatum</i> <i>Rhytidiadelphus loreus</i> <i>Scapania bolanderi</i> <i>Lobaria oregana</i> <i>Usnea mollis</i>	Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	(<i>L. cer macrophyllum</i>) (<i>Arbutus menziesii</i> *) (<i>Cornus nuttallii</i> *) (<i>Pseudotsuga menziesii</i>) <i>Gaultheria shallon</i> <i>Mahonia nervosa</i> (<i>Vaccinium parvifolium</i>) <i>Achlys triphylla</i> (<i>Stokesiella oregana</i>)	Pacific Ranges Drier Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	This variant lacks a distinct characteristic combination of species. It is therefore characterized by the sub-zonal combination of species and the absence of the species for the other variants in the subzone
		Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	<i>Abies amabilis</i> <i>Vaccinium alaskaense</i> (<i>Vaccinium ovalifolium</i>) (<i>Clintonia uniflora</i>) (<i>Rubus pedatus</i>) (<i>Pilophoron clavatus</i> *)	Pacific Ranges Montane Wetter Maritime Coastal Western Hemlock	<i>Chamaecyparis nootkatensis</i> (<i>Vaccinium membranaceum</i> *) (<i>Tsuga mertensiana</i> *) (<i>Rhizomnium nudum</i> *) (<i>Sorbus sitchensis</i>) (<i>Rhytidiopsis robusta</i>)

(1) The selected plant species are arranged alphabetically in the order of trees, shrubs, herbs, mosses (including liverworts) and lichens

(2) Characteristic combination of species for a subzone also includes species listed for the corresponding zone. Characteristic combination of species listed for a variant also includes species listed for the corresponding zone.

- (1) The selected plant species are arranged alphabetically in the order of trees, shrubs, herbs, mosses (including liverworts) and lichens
- (2) Characteristic combination of species for a subzone also includes species listed for the corresponding zone. Characteristic combination of species listed for a variant also includes species listed for the corresponding zone and the subzone
- (3) Plant species listed in parenthesis are less characteristic or less frequently occurring in a particular combination. Species marked with an asterisk occur either on drier, wetter, poorer or richer soils than those in zonal ecosystems

SOURCE: Ibid. Table 6.



SOURCE: Ibid. Table 6.

Table 8: *A synopsis and some characteristics of biogeoclimatic units of British Columbia*

a.

Biogeoclimatic zone Name and symbol	Clouds	Elevation (m)	Major soils	Major pedogenic processes	Major zonal subdivision
(2) Mountain Hemlock (MH)	most common esp. in winter; the least in summer or spring	North: 300 – 900 South: 850 – 1500 on windward side 900 – 1800 on leeward side	Ferro-Humic Podzols, Humic-Podzols, Gleysols and organic soils	mor formation, podzolization, gleization, paludization, kaolinization, "snow patch" sedimentation, clay disintegration	upper (parkland) and lower (forested) maritime (with Pacific silver fir) or subcontinental (with subalpine fir)
(11) Coastal Douglas-fir (CDF)	common in winter, rare in summer	Vancouver Island: 0 – 450 south coast of mainland: 0 – 450	Dystic Brunisols, Humo-Ferric Podzols, Gleysols and organic soils	moder (and mor) formation, kaolinization, melanization, gleization, weak podzolization, weak laterization, weak solodization	drier (AMTP = 637 – 1016mm) and wetter (AMTP = 1016 – 1741)
(12) Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH)	very common in winter, less common in summer	North: 0 – 300 South: windward side: 0 – 900 leeward side: 450 – 1050	Humo-Ferric and Ferro-Humic Podzols, Gleysols and organic soils	mor formation, kaolinization, clay disintegration, podzolization, gleization, very weak laterization, paludization	drier (AMTP = 737 – 2800mm) and wetter (AMTP = 1800 – 6655mm) maritime (with Pacific silver fir) or subcontinental (with subalpine fir)

b.

Biogeoclimatic zone Name and symbol	Number of frost free days	Mean annual temperature (°C)	January mean monthly (°C)	July mean monthly (°C)	Number of months above 10°C	Number of months under 0°C	Annual range of temperature (°C)	Absolute maximum (°C)
(2) Mountain Hemlock (MH)	105 – 210	2 – 7	-10 – -1	11 – 14	1 – 4	1 – 5	16 – 24	24 – 30
(11) Coastal Douglas-fir (CDF)	280 – 354	9 – 11	0 – 4	15 – 19	5 – 6	0 – 1	6 – 11	31 – 41
(12) Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH)	170 – 344	4 – 11	-10 – 5	13 – 19	4 – 7	0 – 3	9 – 25	26 – 43

SOURCE: V.J. Krajina, K. Klinka, and J. Worrall, 1982. Distribution and Ecological Characteristics of Trees and Shrubs of British Columbia. Faculty of Forestry, University of British Columbia. Vancouver.

8c.

Biogeoclimatic zone	Absolute minimum	Annual mean total precipitation	Annual mean snowfall	Snowfall in % of A.M.T.P.	Driest month (in monthly precipitation)	Driest month (in monthly precipitation)	Seasonal occurrence
Name and symbol	(°C)	(mm)	(cm)		(mm)	(mm)	
(2) Mountain Hemlock (MH)	-43 - -22	1780 - 4400	280 - 3000	16 - 70	33 - 88	305 - 475	North: wet - autumn (30-35%) dry - summer (10-15%) South: wet - winter (30-40%) dry - spring or summer (10-15%)
(11) Coastal Douglas-fir (CDF)	-25 - -12	657 - 1741	25 - 162	2 - 10	13 - 48	115 - 270	wet - winter (40-45%) dry - summer (5-10%)
(12) Coastal Western Hemlock (CWH)	-45 - -12	737 - 6655	18 - 792	1 - 41	15 - 162	61 - 1161	North: wet - autumn (30-40%) dry - summer (10-15%) South: wet - winter (30-45%) dry - summer (7-15%)

SOURCE: Ibid. Table 8a,b.

5.4.2 SEAWEEDS AND SALTMARSHES

There are in excess of 500 species of attached marine algae in British Columbia (Scagel, 1978). The classification of algae is based partly on pigmentation; hence the algal groups are Chlorophyceae (green algae), Phaeophyceae (brown algae), and Rhodophyceae (red algae). A fourth group of plants, the sea-grasses, have two genera occurring in British Columbia - Zostera and Phyllospadix. Saltmarsh species include the genera Salicornia, Distichlis, and Triglochin. Several genera (i.e. Scirpus, Typha, Carex) are better adapted to brackish waters, while others (i.e. Festuca, Juncus, Hordeum) inhabit coastal wetlands.

A conspicuous feature of most coastlines is the zonation of seaweeds. Seaweeds occur as horizontal bands, theoretically at least, as a function of their receptivity to different wavelengths of the light spectrum, and the differential attenuation of wavelengths with increasing water depth. Consequently, green algae, brown algae, and red algae should inhabit the upper, middle, and lowermost zones respectively. But other biological and physical factors play a large part in the distribution of seaweeds. A species' tolerance to the factors of dessication (temperature, wind, and humidity) and ultraviolet light are important in setting the upper limits of growth while the lower limits may be determined by the competition between species. Further, preferences for a particular substrate, the wave energy environment and seawater temperatures are important in defining the vertical and horizontal limits of species. Druehl (1967), for instance, found that the horizontal distributions of two forms of Laminaria groenlandica could be explained on the basis of temperature, salinity gradients, and tolerance to

wave shock. De Wreede (1978) speculates that Sargassum muticum and Zostera marina L. will not compete due to different preferences of substrate, while Vadas (1972) has determined that the upper limits for Nereoscystis leutkeana are determined by the competition for light; the lower limits are set by light attenuation. Both Foreman (1977) and Mann (1977) have documented a reduction of algal populations at their lower limits and a succession of species resulting from herbivore grazing.

The intertidal zonation of species on seacoasts is documented by numerous workers (Ricketts and Calvin, 1968; Stephenson and Stephenson, 1972), Kosloff, 1973; Carefoot, 1977). On rocky coasts, the uppermost zone - the supra-littoral fringe - is affected only by the higher tides and wave splash. This band may contain lichens (g. Verrucaria), and where fresh water seepage occurs, the green algae g. Enteromorpha is often found. The upper mid-littoral zone usually harbours the brown algae Fucus distichus, (with which the barnacles are closely associated), the red Endocladia muricata, Cumagloia andersonii, Bangia fuscopurpurea, and Porphyra spp. and the green algae Ulva as the major seaweeds. The lower mid-littoral and sub-tidal zones contain numerous genera, but the most common are Ulva, Spongomorpha coalita (green algae); Hedophyllum sessile, Fucus and Leathesia difformis (brown algae); and Halosaccion glandiforme (red algae). In the infralittoral region are found the surfgrass Phyllospadix, many Laminarians (e.g. Laminaria setchellii), Egregia menziesii, Pterygophora californica, Alaria marginata, Nereocystis luetkeana, Sargassum muticum; the green algae Codium fragile, and the red algae Gigartina exasperata and Iridaea cordata.

Estuarine areas and quiescent mud/sand shores characteristically exhibit Enteromorpha in the upper zone where freshwater seepage is prevalent, scattered Ulva in the lower intertidal where substrate for holdfasts is available, and subtidal beds of Zostera marina (eelgrass). With the growth of eelgrass in the summer months, numerous algae species (such as the red algae Smithora naiadum) colonize the leaves while others, the surface muds around the base. The generation of detritus from numerous plant species within eelgrass beds, and its subsequent invasion by bacteria, forms one of the most productive ecosystems known.

Saltmarshes exhibit zonation from the sea landward although the critical factor that determines band width is the tolerance of species to salt-water. Closest to saline conditions in a primarily mud substrate is found Salicornia virginica and S. europaea commonly known as saltwort. Parasitizing Salicornia is the flowering plant Cuscuta salina and growing beneath it on the substrate are diatoms, blue, and bluegreen algal mats. The saltgrass Distichlis spicata and arrowgrass Triglochin maritimum are commonly associated with Salicornia spp. Moving progressively inland towards a freshwater influence, one encounters Scirpus, Carex, Typha, and Juncus communities.

The ecological importance of seaweeds and saltmarshes is documented in the literature (Perkins, 1974; Cushing and Walsh, 1976; Carefoot, 1977; and Harrison, 1980). Seaweeds provide food for grazers, shelter for numerous organisms including fish, and substrate for reproduction (e.g. herring spawn). Further, some seaweed and seagrass species are extremely important in nutrient cycling within coastal waters. By reducing water current velocities and wave shock they allow nutrient-rich sediments and particulate matter to settle out, thus enriching the substrate for benthic fauna. Marshes are invaluable as nutrient reserves within estuaries, as upland mammal and reptile habitat, and as marine and shorebird habitat. Geese, widgeon, and pintails eat the salt-marsh plant Salicornia, while eelgrass is an important food source for brant.

The economic importance of seaweeds is identified by Greenius (1967) and Carefoot (1977). The natural products of red and brown algae include agar, carrageenan, and algin. They are used in myriad commercial products from food to soaps, paper products, and pharmaceuticals. The genera Gigartina, Iridaea, Nereocystis, Macrocystis, Gracilaria and Gracilariopsis are especially important for these purposes.

5.4.3 MARINE MAMMALS

The marine mammals of the Strait of Georgia and Juan de Fuca Strait include sixteen genera of the order Cetacean (whales and dolphins) and two families of pinnipeds - Otariidae (the eared seals) and Phocidae (the earless seals - Table 9). Within the study area Orcinus orca (killer whale) is the largest resident species. Three family groups of 80 individuals are resident all year and are occasionally joined by about thirty transient individuals. The range of the killer whale in the study area is about 200 nautical miles, although the northern pods from Johnstone Strait do not mix with the southern pods (Bigg, 1981, personal communication). The area immediately north of Cape Lazo represents the southern limit of the northern pods' range and the northern limit of the southern pods' range. Coincidentally, a meeting of the flood tides from Johnstone and Juan de Fuca straits occurs in this area.

Killer whales are nomadic, cruising at 3-4 knots. Their migratory routes are commonly between one and three miles offshore where they are thought to prey primarily on salmon and other fish. Published data for northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca (Simenstad et al 1979) suggest, however, that prey from several trophic levels are taken (Table 10). Although a preferred habitat of killer whales is identified north of the current study area (Robson Bight), no such areas are known within this region.

The harbour seals of the study area are permanent residents, although they roam between haulouts. They frequent estuaries, river deltas, tidal rocks and shallow sublittoral waters within the region. Their daily movements include hauling out during low tides while during high tides they disperse over several miles to feed. Harbour seals generally use haulouts that are not easily approached by predators. Seals prey mainly on littoral fish, although a number of other foods are taken. (Table 10).

TABLE 9 - CETACEANS OCCURRING IN WASHINGTON STATE AND BRITISH COLUMBIA

(Taxonomic Classes after Watson (1981))

Cetacea - whales and dolphins	British Columbia
Order Mysticeti--whalebone whales	
Family Eschrichtiidae--grey whales	
<u>Eschrichtius robustus</u> , grey whale	C
Family Balaenopteridae--furrow-throated whales	
<u>Balaenoptera physalus</u> , fin or finback whale	C
<u>B. borealis</u> , peri whale	C
<u>B. acutorostrata</u> , little piked whale, minke whale	NC
<u>B. musculus</u> , blue whale	NC
<u>Megaptera novaeangliae</u> , humpback whale	NC
Family Balenidae--smooth-throated whales	
<u>Balena glacialis</u> , northern or black right whale	R
Order Odontoceti--toothed whales and dolphins	
Family Ziphiidae--beaked whales	
<u>Berardius bairdii</u> , Baird's beaked whale	C
<u>Mesoplodon stejnegeri</u> , Stejneger beaked whale	R
<u>M. carlhubbsi</u> , Hubbs' beaked whale	R
<u>Ziphius cavirostris</u> , Cuvier's beaked whale	R
Family Physeteridae--sperm whales	
<u>Physeter catodon</u> , sperm whale	C
<u>Kogia breviceps</u> , pygmy sperm whale	NC
Family Delphinidae--ocean dolphins	
<u>Stenella</u> sp., spotted dolphin	R
<u>Delphinus delphis</u> , Pacific common dolphin	R
<u>Lissodelphis borealis</u> , northern right-whale dolphin	R
<u>Lagenorhynchus obliquidens</u> , Pacific white-sided dolphin	C
<u>Grampus griseus</u> , gray grampus or Risso's dolphin	R
Family Phocoenidae--porpoises	
<u>Phocoena phocoena</u> , Pacific harbour porpoise	A
<u>Phocoenoides dalli</u> , Dall's porpoise	C
Family Globicephalidae--pilot and killer whales	
<u>Globicephala macrorhyncha</u> , shortfin pilot whale	NC
<u>Orcinus orca</u> , killer whale	A

Note: A= abundant, C= common, NC= not common, R= rare.

SOURCE: Adapted from: C.A. Simenstad et al (1979). Food web relationships of northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C. p.262-264.

TABLE 10- FUNCTIONAL FEEDING GROUPS AND REPRESENTATIVE PREY TAXA OF MARINE MAMMALS KNOWN OR SUSPECTED TO OCCUR IN NORTH PUGET SOUND AND THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

<u>Habitat</u>	<u>Feeding Group</u>	<u>Predator Species</u>	<u>Representative Prey Taxa</u>
Nearshore	Obligate piscivore	Northern sea lion	Pacific Herring (<u>C. harengus pallasii</u>)
		California sea lion	Pacific sand lance (<u>A. hexapterus</u>)
		Pacific harbour seal	Walleye pollock (<u>T. chalcogramma</u>)
		Harbour porpoise	Salmon (<u>Oncorhynchus</u> sp.)
			Starry flounder (<u>Platichthys stellatus</u>)
			Pacific tomcod (<u>Microgadus pacificus</u>)
			Rockfish (<u>Sebastes</u> sp.)
			Skate (<u>Rajiidae</u>)
			Pacific cod (<u>Gadus macrocephalus</u>)
			Pacific hake (<u>M. productus</u>)
			Spiny dogfish (<u>Squalus acanthias</u>)
			Plainfin midshipman (<u>Porichthys notatus</u>)
			Greenling (<u>Hexagrammidae</u>)
			Shiner perch (<u>Cymatogaster aggregata</u>)
			Shrimp
	Facultative carnivore	Orca (killer whale)	Crab (<u>Cancer</u> Sp.)
			Octopus (<u>Octopus</u> Sp.)
			California sea lion (<u>Zalophus californianus</u>)
			Northern sea lion (<u>Eumetopias jubatus</u>)
			Harbour seal (<u>phoca vitulina</u>)
			Elephant seal (<u>Mirounga californianus</u>)
			Harbor porpoise (<u>Phocoena phocoena</u>)
			Dall porpoise (<u>Phocoenoides dalli</u>)
			Minke whale (<u>Balaenoptera acutorostrata</u>)
			Nursing calves of humpback (<u>Megaptera novaengliae</u>), finback (<u>Balaenoptera physalus</u>), and gray whale (<u>Eschrichtius robustus</u>)
			Lingcod (<u>O. elongatus</u>)
			Salmon (<u>Oncorhynchus</u> sp.)
			Steelhead trout (<u>Salmo gairdneri</u>)
			Pacific halibut (<u>Hippoglossus stenolepis</u>)
			Pacific herring (<u>C. harengus pallasii</u>)?

SOURCE: Adapted from: C.A.Simenstad et al. 1979. Food web relationships of northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington, D.C. p.262-264.

Sea lions, Stellar and California, are resident in the study area during the winter months from November to March. During the summer, California sea lions migrate south while the Stellar sea lions move to rookeries on north Vancouver Island and the Queen Charlotte Islands.

In the study area the two species intermix on tidal rocks. These sites are often chosen in good feeding areas near deep water, isolated from terrestrial predators. Sea lions are nocturnal feeders and prey primarily on fish although, as documented in the Puget Sound area, many other foods are eaten. (Table 10).

5.4.4 MARINE BIRDS

Ecology

The Strait of Georgia provides a major resting and overwintering environment for migrating birds on the Pacific flyway. The environmental advantages of the region include a relatively mild winter climate, abundant food, and a relatively sheltered coastline. Myriad habitat types are found in the estuaries, inlets, coastal embayments and waters for the many species that visit here. Reasons why the Strait of Georgia has not become a major breeding area for most species are somewhat obscure, although food availability during summer and preferred nesting habitat may be significant limiting factors.

Many sea birds survive by adapting one or all of their functions (e.g. reproduction) to the behavior of a prey species (e.g. herring spawn). As the populations of prey species are subject to fluctuations and shifts in location, expected behavior or occurrence may not materialize. The consequences may be catastrophic to sea bird populations in the form of reproductive failures and high adult mortality. When reproductive failures become chronic because of natural or human perturbations, the existence of a colony or population is threatened. Adult enumerations, however, may not reveal the seriousness of the event for some time; complicating natural factors that play important roles in the dynamics of seabird populations may be missed. This leads to erroneous conclusions about the reasons for colony extinction. There is still considerable research required concerning the cyclical phenomena of seabird populations.

Sea birds prey on a diverse array of marine organisms (Table 11) from several trophic levels. Their method of feeding (Table 12) is a consequence of their anatomical design, while the location of their feeding habitat is determined by the distribution of their preferred prey. Similarly, nesting habitat (Table 13) for local breeding species differs significantly among species and almost always is associated with an immediate source of food. It is in this sense that the saltmarshes, eelgrass, and kelp beds are extremely important within the study region for they contain, or support, the food items that permit overwintering survival and reproductive success.

Table 11 - FUNCTIONAL FEEDING GROUPS AND REPRESENTATIVE PREY TAXA OF MARINE AND SHORE BIRDS COMMON TO
NORTHERN PUGET SOUND AND THE STRAIT OF JUAN DE FUCA

Habitat	Trophic position	Predator species	Prey taxa
Offshore neritic	Obligate piscivore	Common murre	Northern anchovy
		Black-legged kittiwake	Eulachon
		Common tern	Pacific herring
		Rhinoceros auklet	Pacific sand lance
		Western grebe	Juv. rockfish
			Juv. Pacific salmon
			Surf smelt
			Night smelt
			Walleye pollock
			Threespine stickleback
	Facultative piscivore	Tufted puffin	Pacific sand lance
		Marbled murrelet	Pacific herring
		Ancient murrelet	Surf smelt
			Northern anchovy
			Rockfish
			Shiner perch
			Juv. rockfish
			Sea urchins
			Bivalve molluscs
			Euphausiids
	Obligate planktivore	Cassins auklet	Calanoid copepods
			Hyperiid amphipods
			Euphausiids
	Facultative planktivore	Mew gull	Euphausiids
		Bonaparte's gull	Hyperiid amphipods
			Pacific herring (larvae?)
			Pacific sand lance (larvae?)
	Parasite	Parasitic jaeger	Foods of gulls and terns

Nearshore kelp beds	Facultative avivore	Bald eagle	Gulls Pigeon guillemots Cormorants Puffins Pacific herring Pacific salmon Dolly Varden Cutthroat trout Flatfishes Sculpins Sea urchins Crabs
	Obligate piscivore	Brandt's cormorant	Redtail surfperch Kelp greenling Black rockfish Cabezon Pacific sand lance
	Facultative piscivore	Heermann's gull	Pacific herring Pacific sand lance
Inshore rocky littoral	Obligate benthivore	Black oystercatcher Whimbrel Black turnstone	Limpets Chitons Bivalve molluscs Barnacles Polychaete annelids
Inshore sand-gravel beaches	Obligate benthivore	Spotted sandpiper Surfbird Least sandpiper Sanderling	Polychaete annelids Amphipods Bivalve molluscs Univalve molluscs
Nearshore shallow sublittoral	Obligate piscivore	Double-crested cormorant Red-necked grebe Common merganser	Penpoint gunnel Crescent gunnel Pacific sand lance Shiner perch Snake prickleback Staghorn sculpin Pacific herring Juv. Pacific salmon Northern anchovy

Facultative piscivore	Arctic loon	Crescent gunnel
	Common loon	Pacific sand lance
Facultative piscivore	Red-throated loon	Penpoint gunnel
	Pelagic cormorant	Staghorn sculpin
Facultative piscivore	Pigeon guillemot	Northern clingfish
	Red breasted merganser	Snake prickleback
Facultative piscivore	Caspian tern	Pacific herring
		Surf smelt
Facultative piscivore		Black prickleback
		Threespine prickleback
Facultative piscivore		Juv. flatfish
		Shrimp
Facultative piscivore		Crabs
Obligate planktivore	Eared grebe	Mysids
Obligate planktivore		Amphipods
Facultative benthivore	Lesser scaup	Bivalve molluscs
	Common goldeneye	Crustaceans
Facultative benthivore	Bufflehead	Fish
	Oldsquaw	Pacific herring eggs
Facultative benthivore	Surf scoter	Eelgrass
Inshore, saltmarsh and mudflats	Obligate herbivore	Eelgrass
		Saltmarsh plants
Inshore, saltmarsh and mudflats	Canada goose	
	Black brant	
Inshore, saltmarsh and mudflats	Snow goose	
	American coot	
Omnivore, Facultative herbivore	Mallard	Eelgrass
	Pintail	Saltmarsh plants, seeds
Omnivore, Facultative herbivore	Northern shoveler	Amphipods
	American widgeon	Insect larvae
Omnivore		
	Dunlin	Saltmarsh plants, seeds
Omnivore	Knot	Amphipods
	Western sandpiper	Polychaete annelids
Omnivore		Oligochaetes
		Bivalve molluscs
Omnivore		Tanaids
		Nematodes

Universal	Obligate piscivore	Great blue heron	Staghorn sculpin Starry flounder Shiner perch Penpoint gunnel
	Obligate benthivore	Short-billed dowitcher Long-billed dowitcher	Polychaete annelids Univalve molluscs Bivalve molluscs Crabs Shrimp Isopods Amphipods
	Facultative benthivore	Greater yellowlegs	Molluscs Crustaceans Fish
	Facultative benthivore	Glaucous-winged gull Western gull	Chitons Starfish Sea cucumbers Sea urchins Crabs Bivalve molluscs Polychaete annelids Pacific herring Northern anchovy Surf smelt Pacific herring eggs Cormorant fledglings Murre fledglings

Source: Adapted from: C.A. Simenstad, B.C. Miller, C.F. Nyblade, K. Thornburgh, and L.J. Bledsoe. 1979.
Food web relationships of northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca.
U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington. pp. 218-224.

TABLE 12 - SIZE RELATIONSHIPS AND FEEDING METHODS OF
MAJOR SPECIES IN THE EASTERN NORTH PACIFIC
AND BERING SEA (D=dive, SS=surface seize,
PP=pursuit plunge, Di=dip, P=plunge, T=tip,
x=eats seabirds, A=piracy, SP=shallow plunge)

Species	Body length (cm)	Bill length (mm)	Feeding method
<i>Gavia immer</i>	61.0	80-82	D
<i>G. arctica</i>	45.7	51-52	D
<i>Podiceps grisegena</i>	33.0	48-50	D
<i>P. nigricollis</i>	22.9	24-26	D
<i>Aechmophorus occidentalis</i>	45.7	65-76	D
<i>Oceanodroma furcata</i>	19.0	15	DiSS
<i>O. leucorhoa</i>	19.0	16	DiSS
<i>Branta</i> spp. (bernicla)	43.5	33-36	T
<i>Anas</i> spp.	40.0	32-35	T
<i>Clangula hyemalis</i>	38.1	25-27	D
<i>Histrionicus histrionicus</i>	30.5	25-28	D
<i>Melanitta deglandi</i>	35.6	41-44	D
<i>M. perspicillata</i>	40.3	ca.40	D
<i>M. nigra</i>	35.6	42-47	D
<i>Mergus serrator</i>	40.3	45-54	D
<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>	80.0	52-54	x
<i>Falco peregrinus</i>	37.5	21-25	x
<i>Stercorarius parasiticus</i>	40.3	32	SS,A
<i>Larus hyperboreus</i>	61.0	55-60	SS
<i>L. glaucescens</i>	55.9	54-58	SS
<i>L. occidentalis</i>	53.0	54-57	SS,Di
<i>L. argentatus</i>	50.8	48-54	SS,Di
<i>L. californicus</i>	43.5	45-50	SS,Di
<i>L. canus</i>	35.6	34-36	SS,Di
<i>Uria aalge</i>	35.6	43-47	D
<i>U. lomvia</i>	35.6	39-42	D
<i>Lunda cirrhata</i>	31.8	57-60	D
<i>Cerorhinca monocerata</i>	29.2	34-35	D
<i>Cephus columba</i>	26.7	32-33	D
<i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i>	20.3	15	D
<i>Synthliboramphus antiquus</i>	20.3	13	D
<i>Ptychoramphus aleuticus</i>	17.8	19	D

SOURCE: Adapted from Ainley, D.G. and G.A. Sanger, 1979. "Trophic Relations of Seabirds in the Northeastern Pacific Ocean and Bering Sea" In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America. J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.). U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11, Washington.

TABLE 13 - NEST-SITE PREFERENCE FOR SEABIRDS BREEDING FROM
CAPE FAIRWEATHER, ALASKA, TO THE COLUMBIA RIVER,
WASHINGTON

Nest-site type	Bird species
Burrow-rock crevice	
Diurnal	Pigeon guillemot Horned puffin Tufted puffin
Nocturnal	Fork-tailed storm-petrel Leach's storm-petrel Kittlitz's murrelet Ancient murrelet Cassin's auklet Rhinoceros auklet
Open nests	
Flat or slope	Double-crested cormorant Brandt's cormorant Glaucous-winged gull Herring gull Western gull Black oystercatcher
Cliff face	Pelagic cormorant Common murre Black-legged kittiwake
Tree branch	Marbled murrelet

Source: D.A. Manuwal and R.W. Campbell (1979). "Status and Distribution of Breeding Seabirds of Southeastern Alaska, British Columbia, and Washington". In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America", J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.), U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11, Washington.

Stress and mortality within seabird populations result from a variety of causes, both natural and human. For instance, commercial and recreational boat traffic is disruptive to feeding and loafing activities; shoreline developments may destroy habitat or disturb breeding times, resulting in higher mortality of the young; predators introduced to isolated islands often result in marked reductions in the breeding population and its reproductive success; many diving birds are drowned in the nets of commercial fishermen; agricultural chemicals and spent lead shot may kill or poison birds; and oil spills may destroy entire populations or habitat.

Oil affects the plumage, physiology, and reproduction of marine birds. Contamination of the plumage by oil reduces the insulation characteristics, thereby inducing thermal stress. Further, soiled plumage will impair the ability to fly or float. Consequently, a contaminated bird will be less successful at feeding or escaping predators. The ingestion of oil by birds may result in a variety of internal disorders that affect the fitness of the individual as well as its ability to reproduce. Contaminated adult birds returning to the nest inadvertently contaminate the eggs or young, thereby reducing their probability of survival. An oil vulnerability index devised for water birds provides some insight as to the relative risk to representative species (Table 14).

There are also numerous additional human activities which affect the lives of marine bird species, especially in estuaries and lagoons. These coastal forms are relatively flat and commonly become in focus for industrial, agricultural, and commercial projects. A synopsis of the impacts caused by many activities found within estuaries is presented in Table 15.

5.4.5 FISH AND SHELLFISH RESOURCES

Importance of the Study Area

The South Mainland Coast study area is complex, encompassing unsheltered, open waters, portions of several coastal fjords, and numerous islands. These marine waters are integral to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait system, producing stocks of salmon, groundfish, herring and shellfish. The adjoining fresh waters support anadromous and resident fish populations of salmon, trout and char. These stocks are the object of commercial, recreational and native Indian fisheries.

The federal Department of Fisheries and Oceans has divided British Columbia's waters into the "Statistical Areas" shown in Figure 11. Most fisheries statistics (landings, escapements, economic values) are compiled according to these areas. To illustrate the local and regional perspective, data are organized by Statistical Area, by Coastal Resource Folio study area, and by the entire Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait region (Areas 13 to 20, 28, 29). Statistical area boundaries may vary slightly from the Pacific Fishery Management Areas recently defined under the Pacific Fishery Management Area Regulations.

The present study area includes Statistical Areas 15 and 16, plus portions of areas 13, 14, 17, 28 and 29. In most cases, it is impossible to accurately apportion statistics from a statistical area to a more specific locality; activity in Areas 13, 14, 17 and 29 is primarily outside the South Mainland Coast. Therefore, except where subdivision is possible (e.g. escapements), the study area will be considered, for statistical purposes, to be limited to Areas 15 and 16.

TABLE 14 - OIL VULNERABILITY INDEX (OV1) FOR REPRESENTATIVE
WATERBIRDS IN THE NORTHEAST PACIFIC REGION

Family, common name and scientific name	OV1*
Gaviidae	
Common loon (<i>Gavia immer</i>)	47
Arctic loon (<i>G. Arctica</i>)	58
Podicipedidae	
Western grebe (<i>Aechmophorus occidentalis</i>)	56
Hydrobatidae	
Leach's storm-petrel (<i>Oceanodroma leucohoa</i>)	63
Phalacrocoracidae	
Double-crested cormorant (<i>Phalacrocorax auritus</i>)	52
Brandt's cormorant (<i>P. penicillatus</i>)	57
Pelagic cormorant (<i>P. pelagicus</i>)	63
Ardeidae	
Trumpeter swan (<i>Olorcygnus buccinator</i>)	63
Canada goose (<i>Branta canadensis</i>)	34
Black brant (<i>B. nigricans</i>)	70
Snow goose (<i>Chen hyperborea</i>)	32
Mallard (<i>Anas platyrhynchos</i>)	36
American widgeon (<i>M. americana</i>)	36
Greater scaup (<i>Aythya marila</i>)	52
Barrow's goldeneye (<i>Bucephala islandica</i>)	56
Bufflehead (<i>B. albeola</i>)	52
Oldsquaw (<i>Clangula hyemalis</i>)	66
Harlequin duck (<i>Histrionicus histrionicus</i>)	60
Surf scoter (<i>Melanitta deglandi</i>)	72
Common merganser (<i>Mergus merganser</i>)	56
Accipitridae	
Bald eagle (<i>Haliaeetus leucocephalus</i>)	58
Pandionidac	
Osprey (<i>Pandion haliaetus</i>)	37
Falconidae	
Peregrine falcon (<i>Falco peregrinus</i>)	41
Haematopodidae	
Black oystercatcher (<i>Haematopus bachmani</i>)	65

Family, common name and scientific name	OVI*
Scolopacidae	
Wandering tattler (<i>Heteroscelus incanum</i>)	48
Dunlin (<i>Erolia alpina</i>)	41
Western sandpiper (<i>Eremyrd msuti</i>)	47
Phalaropodidae	
Red phalarope (<i>Phalaropus fulicarius</i>)	58
Stercorariidae	
Parasitic jaegar (<i>tercorarius parasiticus</i>)	43
Laridae	
Glaucous-winged gull (<i>Larus glaucescens</i>)	56
Herring gull (<i>L. argentatus</i>)	38
Thayer's gull (<i>L. thayeri</i>)	42
California gull (<i>L. californicus</i>)	38
Mew gull (<i>L. canus</i>)	44
Alcidae	
Common murre (<i>Uria aalge</i>)	70
Pigeon guillemot (<i>Cepphus columba</i>)	82
Marbled murrelet (<i>Brachyramphus marmoratus</i>)	84
Rhinoceros auklet (<i>Cerorhinca monocerata</i>)	74
Horned puffin (<i>Fratercula corniculata</i>)	72
Tufted puffin (<i>Lunda cirrhata</i>)	72

* The Oil Vulnerability Index is based on the rating of five categories - species range, population, habits, mortality and annual exposure. The higher the OVI number the more vulnerable the species would be to oil spills.

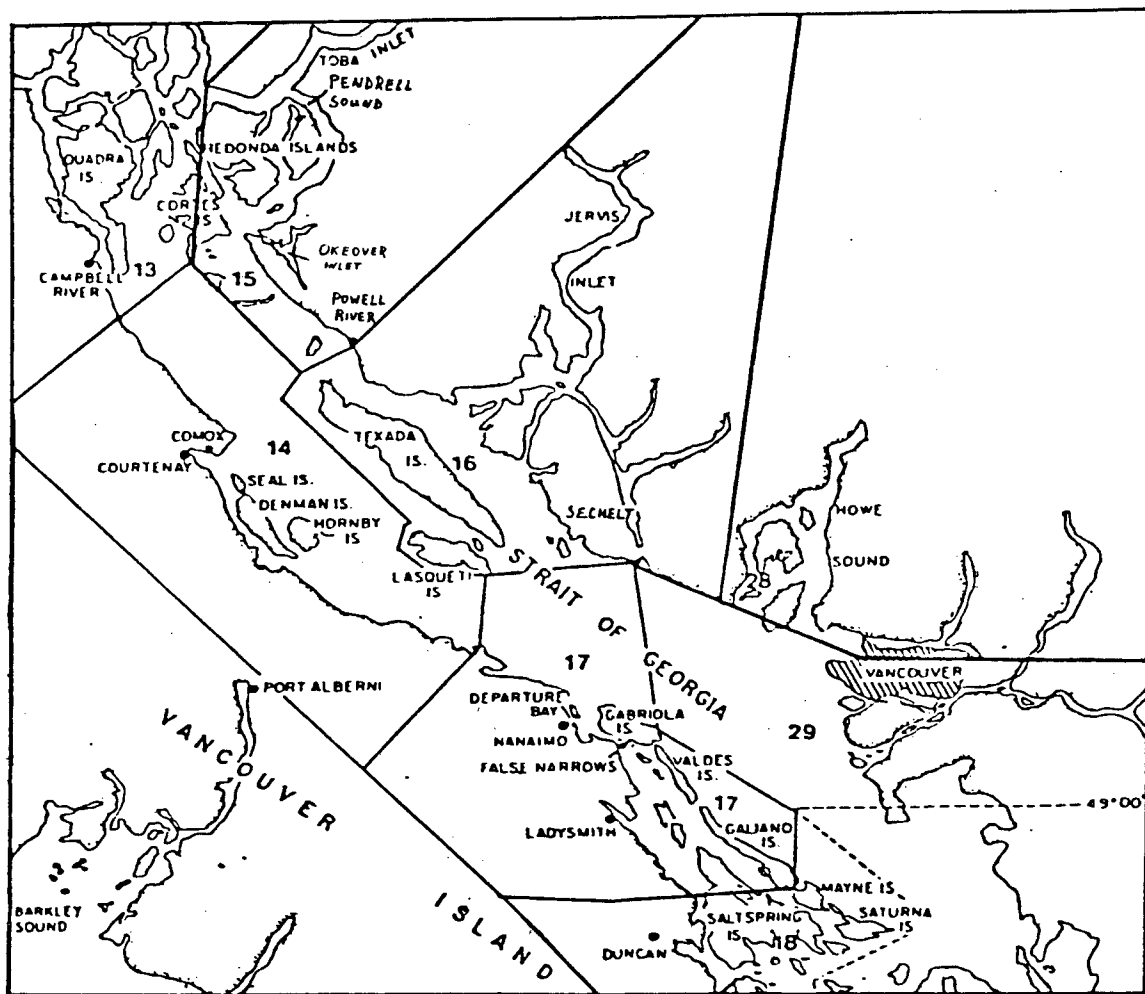
SOURCE: J.G. King and G.A. Sanger, 1979. "Oil Vulnerability Index for Marine Oriented Birds". In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America. J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.). U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11, Washington.

TABLE 15 A SYNOPSIS OF THE IMPACTS CAUSED BY SELECTED
ACTIVITIES COMMON WITHIN ESTUARIES

Activity		First Effect	Second Effect
Logging	1) Log Dumping and Sorting	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - deposition of bark and wood - tow boat prop wash - scours sediments - land requirements 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - smothers vegetation - disturbs sediments - destroys vegetation - destroys shoreline habitat
	2) Log Storage	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - leachates enter water - bark and debris increase B.O.D. - physical shading of substrate and water column - scouring during low tides 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - toxic substances for some organisms - decreased dissolved oxygen - lower rate of photosynthesis - destruction of vegetation - destruction of benthic communities
Dyking	1) General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - change from saline marsh to freshwater marsh over short time period 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - change in vegetation species (habitat type) - change in waterfowl composition
	2) Agricultural	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - loss of bird habitat - use of pesticides, herbicides, etc. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - elimination of many bird species from area - bird mortality
	3) Transportation	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - loss of bird habitat - toxic wastes from industrial development - increased air and noise pollution 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - elimination of many bird species - increased bird mortality
Dredging	General	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - destruction of benthic communities - destruction of seaweed substrate - increased turbidity - alteration of tidal prism - increased B.O.D. 	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> - elimination of habitat and bird species - smothering of adjacent benthic communities

SOURCE: Adapted from: R.A. Hunter and L.E. Jones, 1982. Coastal Waterfowl and Habitat Inventory Program: Summary Report and Appendices. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Terrestrial Studies Branch. Victoria.

FIGURE 11 FISHERIES STATISTICAL AREAS OF THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA.



NOTE: The study area includes all of Areas 15 and 16 and portions of Areas 13, 14, 17, 28 and 29.

Table 16 summarizes the contribution of the South Mainland Coast commercial fishery to the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait region. The study area supplies only 4% of the total salmon, 10% of the groundfish, and a maximum of 4% of the herring. In contrast, the area produces 22% of the shellfish (excluding oysters). The majority of commercial salmon, groundfish and herring landings are from Area 16, while Area 15 is the primary source of shellfish.

The sport fishery has greater significance in the region (Table 17). It accounted for 26% of the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait region's groundfish in 1982, and 22% of the clams, abalone and cutthroat trout in 1981. As in the commercial fishery, Area 16 was the more active area. Table 17 also shows that 75% of the study area's Indian food catch originated in Area 15.

TABLE 16 PERCENTAGE OF STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT
(COMMERCIAL FISH AND SHELLFISH CATCH ORIGINATING FROM
THE SOUTH MAINLAND COAST)

Species	Area 15	Area 16	Total
Salmon (1975-1981)			
Chinook	4	4	8
Coho	2	2	4
Chum	0	0.1	0.1
Sockeye	0	6	6
Pink	0	2	2
All Salmon	1	3	4
Groundfish (1979-1982)			
Pacific cod	0	0	0
Dogfish	5	14	19
Hake	1	9	10
Walleye pollock	0.1	7	7
Rockfish	3	8	11
Ling cod	2	1	3
Sablefish	2	1	3
All Groundfish	2	8	10
Herring (1976-1983)			
roe	4	0	4
food and bait	0	0.4	0.4
Shellfish (1975-1981)			
Shrimps and prawns	2	12	14
Clams (excludes geoducks)	30	8	38
Geoduck clam(1977-1981)	19	14	33
Crabs	0	1	1
Oysters	7	1	8
All Shellfish (except oysters)	14	8	22

NOTE: Percentages calculated from Table 18 (salmon), Table 26 (groundfish), Table 29 (herring) and Table 30a (shellfish). All original values in tonnes except for oysters (U.S. gallons shucked) and herring (short tons).

TABLE 17 PERCENTAGE OF STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SPORT
AND INDIAN FOOD FISHERIES CATCHES ORIGINATING FROM THE
SOUTH MAINLAND COAST

Species	Area 15	Area	Total catch
<u>Sport fishery</u>			
Total Salmonid (1980-1981)	2	14	16
Total Salmon (1982)	2	14	16
Cutthroat trout (1981)	0	22	22
Groundfish (1982)			
Rockfish	3	13	27
Ling cod	3	22	25
All Groundfish	3	23	26
Herring (1981)	0	0	0
Shellfish (1981)			
Shrimp and prawns	0	0	0
Clams	2	20	22
Abalone	3	19	22
Crabs	0	5	5
Oysters	0.5	20	20
<u>Indian subsistence food fishery (1972-1976)</u>	6	2	8

NOTE: Percentages calculated from Table 18 (total salmonid, total salmon and cutthroat), Table 27 (groundfish), text (herring) and Table 30b (shellfish). All original values in actual numbers or pieces.

Anadromous and Resident Fish Species

Resource

A comprehensive review of the commercial salmon fishery in British Columbia for the years 1951 to 1963 has been provided by Aro and Shepard (1967). Although salmon have been fished traditionally throughout the study area, activity now is concentrated at the locations shown on the Coastal Resources Map Series (1:50,000 and 1:10,000) Fish and Shellfish Resources. Trolling occurs throughout the study area, whereas seining and gillnetting are conducted in a few areas such as near the Trail Islands and the west side of Texada Island. Table 18 compares the average annual salmon catch for Statistical Areas 15 and 16 with the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait catch for the years 1975 to 1981. The table also provides a comparison of catch statistics between the present folio area and two previous folios. The South Mainland Coast accounts for only 4% of the total regional landings; Area 16 contributes three-quarters of that total due to the much greater sockeye and pink catches. Steelhead are caught only incidentally during the fishery. (British Columbia, Ministry of Recreation and Conservation, 1970-71 to 1980-81).

TABLE 18 SALMON FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST:
AVERAGE ANNUAL COMMERCIAL SALMON CATCH
(NEAREST TONNE) 1975 TO 1981, THE
GEORGIA STRAIT-JUAN DE FUCA SYSTEM

Species	South Main- land Coast			East Coast	South Coast		Total All Areas
	15	16	13	Vancouver Is. 14, 17, 18	Vancouver Is. 19 20	28, 29	
Chinook	50	47	208	351	114	446	1,216
Coho	27	27	202	191	884	116	1,447
Chum	0	2	1081	263	213	376	1,935
Sockeye	0	219	1084	55	1028	1554	3,940
Pink	2	68	723	54	2317	380	3,544
Total	79 (1%)	363 (3%)	3298 (28%)	2872 (24%)	4556 (38%)	2872 (24%)	12,082 (100%)

SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1975-1981. British Columbia catch statistics (annual reports). Vancouver, B.C.

The tidal salmon sport fishery occurs predominantly along the more populated mainland coast, with relatively little activity in mid-strait or the more remote localities. Several studies released between 1976 and 1978 suggest previous sport catch statistics under-estimate the actual

catch values; subsequently, efforts have been directed toward improving the estimation procedures. Results of the province-wide Tidal Sport-fishing Diary Program (MacGregor, 1982 and Bijsteweld, 1983) and the Strait of Georgia-oriented program of aerial overflights and landing site surveys (Shardlow, 1983) are presented in Table 19. Although the methodologies and survey periods differ, both data sets indicate that Areas 15 and 16 together account for about 16% of the total regional catch. As in the commercial harvest, most of the study area (85-90%) landings came from Area 16.

Chinook represented 73 to 81% of the total catch. These results are consistent with those of Argue, Coursley and Harris (1977) who revised sport catch estimates based on data from the 1972 to 1976 Strait of Georgia Head Recovery Program (Table 20). Their data also demonstrated (Table 21) that the combined chinook and coho catch almost tripled that of the commercial troll fishery for these species.

Sport catch estimates for sea-run cutthroat trout and steelhead have been compiled, respectively, during the 1981 Department of Fisheries and Oceans Tidal Diary Program (Table 19) and during the provincial Fish and Wildlife Branch annual Steelhead Harvest Analysis (Table 22). Area 16 cutthroat catches were the second largest of the statistical areas surveyed in the region. Most of the steelhead harvest returns come from Lang and Chapman creeks, with intermittent success in some smaller streams such as Forbes, Gray and Roberts creeks.

The South Mainland Coast food fishery conducted by the Klahoose (from Squirrel Cove on Cortes Island) and the Sliammon and Sechelt Indian bands is concentrated around Squirrel Cove, the Sliammon River, the eastern side of Harwood Island, the head of Okeover Inlet, Lang Bay and Frail Bay. Friedlander and Reif (1979) reviewed the provincial Indian food fishery with respect to salmonid enhancement opportunities. The average annual subsistence catches for Statistical Areas 15 and 16 for 1972 to 1976 are compiled in Table 23. As in other areas, chum represents the largest percentage (74-90%) of that total. Unlike the commercial and sport fishery patterns, Area 15 contributed the largest share of study area catch.

The study area contains resident fish stocks of Dolly Varden char, kokanee (land-locked sockeye), cutthroat, and rainbow trout (non-migratory steelhead), all of which are fished recreationally. Cutthroat trout are the most frequently harvested species. Again, the level of freshwater fishing activity is related to population distribution, accessibility and stock availability. South of Pender Harbour, sport fishing occurs most frequently in the lower reaches of streams near the main highway; the more extensively utilized Chapman Creek is an exception. To the north (including Texada and other islands), lake fishing predominates. Locations of, and estimates of the relative intensity of, resident sport fishing are portrayed on the accompanying Coastal Resource Folio map series. Recreational catch statistics for the South Mainland Coast are not presently available.

TABLE 19 SALMON AND TROUT FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: SPORT FISHING CATCH (THOUSANDS OF FISH),
1980 TO 1981, 1982, RELATIVE TO THE GEORGIA STRAIT-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Species	South Mainland Coast		13	East Coast Vancouver Island			South Coast Vancouver Island		28	29	Total All Areas
	15	16		14	17	18	19A	19B+a			
<u>July 1980 to June 1981^b</u>											
Chinook	4.8	32.1	40.1	32.5	57.8	27.4	8.7	25.4	17.9	20.3	323.7
Coho	15.8	82.3	177.0	124.5	44.8	17.6	31.9	58.9	18.5	22.2	536.8
Total Salmonid	21.1	115.1	219.9	161.0	103.4	48.4	41.0	86.9	37.0	43.4	877.2
<u>1982^c</u>											
							<u>19</u>	<u>20</u>			
Chinook	1.9	15.0	14.2	19.5	21.1	18.0	24.5	8.8	10.2	12.2	145.4
Coho	5.8	62.0	63.6	126.9	58.9	23.9	17.0	14.2	4.4	13.4	390.1
Total Salmon	7.7	81.0	82.7	149.8	81.8	43.7	43.7	24.1	15.7	28.0	558.2
<u>1981^c</u>											
Cutthroat		3.0	0.1	0.1	2.0	0.4			2.8	5.5	13.8

NOTE: ^a Area 19B+ data also includes that portion of Area 20 east of Sheringham Point.

SOURCES: ^b Shardlow, T. 1983. Personal communication. Data from creel survey conducted by DPA Consulting Ltd. Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Nanaimo, B.C.

^c Bijsterveld, L. 1983. Personal communication. Tidal sport fishing diary program data. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver, B.C.

TABLE 20 SALMON FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST:
AVERAGE ANNUAL SPORT CATCH (THOUSANDS OF
FISH), 1972 TO 1976, RELATIVE TO THE
GEORGIA STRAIT-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Species	13, 14 ^a	15, 16	17	18, 19B	28, 29	19B,20	Total All Areas
Coho	263	80(17%) ^b	47	47	15	18	470
Chinook	84	44(13%)	45	76	38	55	342
Pink ^c	6	1(5%)	1	2	1	9	20
Total	353	125(15%)	93	125	54	82	832

NOTE: ^aIncludes minor catches of sockeye and chum.

^bPercentage of catch in study area compared to the total for the system.

^cSport Salmon Fishing in Area 13, covering the northern approach to the Strait of Georgia, is predominantly within the Campbell River region.

TABLE 21 A COMPARISON OF SPORT VERSUS COMMERCIAL SALMON CATCH
(THOUSANDS OF FISH) IN THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA REGION
FOR THE PERIOD 1972-1975

Species	Commercial (trawl)	Sport	Total	% Sport
Coho	98	470	568	83%
Chinook	183	343	526	65%
Total	281	813	1094	74%

SOURCE: A.W. Argue, J. Coursley and G.D. Harris, 1977. Preliminary revision of Georgia Strait and Juan de Fuca Strait tidal salmon sport catch statistics, 1972 to 1976, based on Georgia Strait Head Recovery Program data. Technical Report Series PAC/T-77-16. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.

TABLE 22 ESTIMATED ANNUAL STEELHEAD TROUT CATCH (NUMBERS OF FISH) FOR
THE SOUTH MAINLAND COAST, 1973-1974 TO 1982-1983

Stream	1973-74	1974-75	1975-76	1976-77	1977-78	1978-79	1979-80	1980-81	1981-82	1982-83
<u>Statistical Area 15</u>										
Forbes Creek								3		
<u>Statistical Area 16</u>										
Gray Creek	3	3		3	3		3	3	2	
Lang Creek	67	92	111	71	20	30	61	59	29	31
<u>Statistical Area 28</u>										
Chapman Creek		21	49	67	31	12	45	15	8	27
Roberts Creek					6	3				
Wilson Creek		3								
Total Catch	70	119	160	141	60	45	109	80	39	58

SOURCES: British Columbia, Ministry of Recreation and Conservation, 1970-71 to 1980-81. Steelhead harvest analyses. Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.

Billings, S. 1983. Personal communication. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.

TABLE 23 SALMON AND STEELHEAD FISHERIES OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST:
AVERAGE ANNUAL NATIVE INDIAN SUBSISTENCE CATCH (NUMBERS
OF FISH), 1972 TO 1976

Species	South Mainland Coast		East Coast		South Coast		Total All Areas
	15	16	13	Vancouver Is. 14,17,18	Vancouver Is. 19, 20	28 29	
Chinook	177(129)	15(23)	95	2,119	128	451 26	1,173
Chinook	126(129)	61(77)	353	2,574	543	2490 927	5,080
Chum	1984(2552)	324(772)	5506	13,280	1823	2932 435	24,824
Sockeye		27(103)	1022		64	1618	2,731
Pink	1(1)	(32)	725		50	400 25	1,202
Steelhead	2(2)	2(3)		30	20	46 5	77
Total	2290	429	7701	17,973	2628	6319 3036	35,087

NOTES: Caution should be exercised in making comparisons between statistical areas due to the wide variability in methods for estimating catch between districts.

SOURCES: Aro, K.V. 1972- 1980. Indian subsistence catch statistics on file. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

Friedlander, M. J. and G. Reif. 1979. Working paper on Indian food fisheries and salmonid enhancement. Prepared for Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver, by Edwin, Reid and Associates Ltd.

Habitat Requirements

Spawning Escapements

Anadromous fish species such as salmon, steelhead and coastal cutthroat trout, characteristically spend parts of their lives in freshwater environments. Resident fish species inhabit fresh water throughout their life history, and may restrict their movements to relatively localized areas, or migrate long distances, depending on habitat availability and access. The general biology of anadromous and resident fishes is described in Hart (1973) and Scott and Crossman (1973).

Successful spawning requires specific environmental conditions. Schmidt, Graham and McDonald (1979), in an annotated bibliography of the literature describing British Columbia salmon and trout environments, noted the following four major determinants of stream productivity:

- a) water temperature, which regulates levels of biological activity and may induce stress or mortality;
- b) stream hydrology, which influences the nature and availability of habitat through changes in water depth, velocity, width, channel configuration, gradient and bed roughness;
- c) spawning gravel, which determines egg and alevin subgravel development;
- d) downstream juvenile migration, the success of which ultimately determines size and vigor of adult populations.

The major physical characteristics of study area streams and the species utilizing them are summarized in Table 24.

The South Mainland Coast contains 31 salmon spawning streams (Table 25); most of these also contain sea-run cutthroat, while a handful contain steelhead. Suitable anadromous habitat for the majority of watercourses is within the first three to four kilometres. Six systems - Sliammon Creek, the Theodosia River, Pender Harbour Creeks, the Sakinaw Lakes, Love Creek and Chapman Creek - support anadromous populations much farther upstream, and all but the last two (which contain steelhead) support average annual escapements of greater than 5000 spawners. Coho (the major species present), chum and coastal cutthroat trout occur in most of the area streams, while the Sakinaw Lakes support moderate runs of sockeye. The streams north of Jervis Inlet support minimal quantities of pinks.

Resident populations of cutthroat trout are present in the upper reaches of watersheds throughout the study area, while rainbow and kokanee occur less frequently.

Stream, Estuarine and Nearshore Rearing

Coho, sockeye, chinook, sea-run cutthroat and steelhead all utilize streams or lakes for rearing. Coho and sockeye remain in fresh water from one to several years before migrating to the sea; chinook remain in fresh water for three months to a year. Pinks and chum juveniles arrive in the estuary shortly after emergence from the spawning ground. Although chum and chinooks are the chief users of estuaries, some stocks of coho, pink and sockeye salmon are also known to depend on estuaries as juveniles.

Salmonid Enhancement Program (SEP)

Several SEP projects are presently being conducted within the study area, including a coho, chum and chinook hatchery and rearing facility at Sechelt, a chum and coho hatchery and counting fence on Sliammon Creek, and on Lang Creek, a coho incubation tray and rearing ponds. Eggs from Kelly and Whittall creeks are also incubated at the latter site. In addition, a variety of smaller voluntary projects are also being undertaken.

TABLE 24 INVENTORY OF MAJOR PHYSICAL CHARACTERISTICS OF SPANNING STREAMS AND A CHECKLIST OF

UTILIZATION BY INDIVIDUAL FISH SPECIES

	Length (km) ^a	Width (m) ^b	Drainage area(km ²) ^c	Substrate ^d % composition	Lake(s)	Discharge(cfs) ^e	Extreme flows		Water No.	Licenses ^f		Comments	Fish Species Present ^g							Anadromous				
							Low	High		Total	Volume		SK	CH	CO	CM	PK	ST	CT-ANAD	CT-RES	DV	KO	RB	access(km) ^h
13																								
Evans	1												*	*										
Hansens	2												*	*										2
15																								
Black L	4				*								*						*R(0)	*				4
Forbes	5			10,30,60,0(0.5)	*			*				Lower portion diverted	*R(0)	*R(0)	*	*								1.5 falls
Ellis Cassel L's	9				*							Sluice gate							*					0
Hague-Gunflint L's	4				*			*					*	*					*	*				
Inland L.	4																		*S		*	*S		
Mouat	7								2	2000g			*	*		*R(0)			*R(0)					
Okeover	5							*					*S	*S	*				*U					2
Olsen	5			10,40,50,0(2) 20,30,50,0(4)								Regulated Flow							*U		*			5
Pendrell Sound													*	*		*								
Powell L.	53				*				8	1,177,454g	3,892cs;	Regulated Flow							*S		*	*	*	to dam
Refuge Lagoon	4				*							Sluice Gate	*	*					*	*				4
Slammon	8				*	11.4Mx,0.028Mn	*		1	100,000g		Ch & Co counting fence	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*		*		5 falls
"Squirrel Cove"	4				*								*	*					*	*				1
Theodosia	24			10,60,30,0(1.5) 20,20,60,0(4)	*	52.7Mx,0.038-0.38Mn	*	*	1	210,000g		Regulated flow severe flash floods heavily logged	*S	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*R	*		5 falls
Unwin L.	4				*								*						*	*				4
16																								
Angus	5	5-6 Upstream 8 mouth	10.7	10,30,60,0(0)		4.47i			1		6cs		*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*				2
"BoatCove"	3				*	0.34Mx,0Mn													*					
Bruce	3	2			*				4	3,500g	2cs; 10af								*					0 falls
Burnet	5	4 mouth	7.7	10,40,50,0(0) 90,10,0,0(0.5)					6	21,000g		Effluent discharges												
Carlson	11	9 mouth 7 at 3.5km	23.4	20,80,0,0(0) 90,30,70(6)	*								*R(0)	*S,R(0)	*			*	*					1.5 falls
Coluin	2	2	3.8	70,30,0,0(0)	*								*	*					*	*				1
Cranby	3				*								*	*					*	*				2
Deighton	3								5	5,000g	35af	Dammed	*	*					*U					1.5
Gray	15	15 mouth	58.6	0,20,80,0(0) 10,30,60,0(8)		20-30	*	*					*S	*S	*S	*	*	*	*	*		*		1 falls
Halfmoon	9	8-12	12.1	0,10,70,20(0) 20,60,20,0(2)					10	6,000g			*R	*R				*	*					1 falls
Haflam	2	6 Upstream	15.8	50,40,10(3)					7	406,000g	2cs; 401.5af							*						0.3 falls
Homesite	9	6 mouth 20 middle	21.8	10,40,50,0(3) 10,10,70,20(7)												*			*U					0 falls
Irvine	3		4.4		*								*						*					0.3
Jefferd	3	8 mouths		20,40,40,0(0)			*	*	24	93,000g			*	*R(0)	*R(0)			*						0.5
Jergens	4	2.3			*								*	*					*					0.5 falls
Kelly	7				*				7	3,600g	0.53af		*	*R(0)	*R(0)			*						0.5
Kenyon	3	3-4	6.0	10,30,40,20(0)									*						*					0.3
Lang	27					46.7Mx,0.048-0.061Mn			12	42,700g	7af	Heavy debris below Duck L	*R	*R	*R	*	*R	*S			*	*		01
Lois	36				*	163Mx0Mn	*	*	3		469,000af 1,300cs		*	*R(0)	*R(0)	*	*S	*						0.3 falls
Myrtle	8				*				12	55,500g	12.1af		*	*R(0)	*R(0)				*U					0.3
Paq	6	2	1.6		*								*S						*U					0.3
Pender Harbour	7	2.5 downstream											*R(0)	*R(0)		*R(0)	*R(0)							3
Quarry	0.3				*														*U					
Rainy day	4	3		30,50,20,0(1)			*						*	*										3
Sakinaw L's System	12		71.9		*				19	226,900g	1,006af		*R	*R,S	*			*	*R,S					
Saltery Bay	3	5		20,60,20,0(0.5)									*		*R(L)			*						1
Silversands	3	6	12.9	0,0,40,60(0) 40,20,60,70,0														*	*					0
Snake Bay	2		3.2										*	*				*						1 falls
Trout L.	3		4.6		*				3	60,000g	40af							*U			*			0 falls
West L.	6		6										*	*	*			*	*		*			6
Whittal	3		3				*		9	3,000g	41.27af		*	*R(0)	*R(0)			*	*					to head waters
28																								
Chapman	23	13-20	70.1	10,20,70,0(1) 10,80,10,0(5) 10,10,70,10(12)	*	193Mx,0.034-0.096Mn	*	*	6	1,325,00g	745af	Regulated flow past scouring	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*	*			5 falls
Chester	3	3.7	8.8	10,20,70,0(0)		0.35Mx,0Mn			14	257,00g		past scouring	*	*		*S		*	*					2 falls
Flume	3	1.4	14.0	10,30,60,0(0)	*	0.31i	*		27	13,600g			*	*				*	*					1 falls
Hudson	4	1.2	5.9			1i							*						*U					1
Malcolm	2	3.6	2.0	30,50,60,0(0)		5i							*	*				*						0.3
Roberts	8	2.8	29.0	10,30,60,0(0) 0,40,50,10,(1.5)		31.1Mx,0.024-0.105Mn			10	7,100g		Regulated flow past scouring	*R(0)	*R(0),S		*R	*R	*	*					1 falls
Robinson	6	1.2	6.8	10,30,60,0(1)		0.25-0.5i			9	4,800g								*						0.5 falls
Wakefield	4		14.6	10,30,60,0(0) 40,80,10,0(3)	*		*			6,500g		Regulated flow	*R(0)	*R(0)		*	*	*						2 falls
Wilson	7		25.3	10,60,30,0(0)		3.56			5	3,000g	3af	Incubation box; first ladder	*R(0)	*R(0)		*R(0)	*R(0)	*R(0)						

NOTES:

• indicates presence

a - measured from topographic map.

b - From Aquatic Studies Branch(ASB) biophysical maps and Harding and Erickson.(1975)

c - from ASB computer file

d - % fines, gravels, larges, bedrock (distance in km upstream from mouth) from ASB biophysical maps.

e-i-Instantaneous values from Harding and Erickson (1975), Mx - maximum value Mn - minimum value .

f - g - gallons; af - acre feet; cs - ft³/secg - Species: SK - Sockeye, CH - Chinook, CO - Coho, CM - Chum, PK - Pink, ST - steelhead,
CT-ANAD, CT-RES (*U - CT Unspecified), DV - Dolly Varden, KO - Kokanee, RB - Rainbow, R - Rearing,
S - Spawning, (0) indicates activity at mouth or estuary.

h - Upstream limit from mouth; if falls form the barriers; "falls" appear with the distance upstream.

TABLE 25

Average Annual Spawning Escapements (number of fish) to South Mainland Coast Streams 1967 - 1976 and 1977 - 1981

Stream	1967-1976					1967-1976					1977-1981					1977-1981				
	*CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species	CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species	CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species		
<u>Statistical Area 13</u>																				
Evans Creek		65	1255			1320		82(4)	475(4)			557(4)								
Hanson's Creek		12(8)	222			234		File unavailable												
<u>Statistical Area 15</u>																				
Forbes Creek		4	940		40	984			854			854								
Okeover		56	1576		1	1633		5	4310			4315								
Pendrell Sound Creek		91(8)	200		5	296			338(4)			338(4)								
Refuge Lagoon		283	60			343		100(3)				100(3)								
Salt Lagoon		98	122			220		1977-0; No Records												
Sliammon Creek		520	5060			5880		12(4)	12500(4)			12512(4)								
Small Creek			267			267		No Records												
Theodosia River	20	1430	6400		19	7869		420	1770		18	2208								
<u>Statistical Area 16</u>																				
Angus Creek		55	1452			1507		5	1156		4	1161								
Carlson Creek			776			7761		4	704			709								
Dayton Creek		2(9)	666(9)			668(9)		9	1216			1225								
Gray Creek		17	68		5	703		No Records												
Jefferd Creek		12	403			415		1	2490			2491								
Kelly Creek		20	634			654		12	1006			1018								
Lang Creek		470	2355			2825		806	2453		36	3295								
Lois River			216			216		7	465			472								
Myrtle Creek		22	352			374		45	930			975								

Stream	1967-1976					1967-1976					1977-1981					1977-1981				
	CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species	CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species	CH	CO	CM	SK	PK	All Species		
Pender Harbour Creek		485	7800			8285		139	5330			5469								
Sakinaw Lake System		2130	275	6820		9225		4644	240	4400		5684								
Saltery Bay Creek		58	10440			10498		47												
Snake Bay Creek		16	191			207		2	688			690								
West Lake Creek		200(7)	329(7)	7(7)		600(7)		44	710			754								
Whittal Creek		104	754			858		66	2850		23	2939								
<u>Statistical Area 28</u>																				
Chapman Creek		25	1465	18		1508		40	1040		2	1082								
Chaster Creek		1	75(6)			76		8	116			124								
Flume Creek			25(5)			25(5)			N10											
Roberts Creek			1368			1368			630			630								
Wakefield Creek			557(7)			557(7)			180			180								
Wilson Creek		36(7)	23(7)			59(7)		53(4)	244(4)			297								

NOTES:

(#) Number of years for which average was calculated if less than 5 or 10 years.

Escapements averaged for odd plus even years.

Steelhead escapements have been rated for following: area streams: Sliammon(1966), Lang, Sakinaw (1968), Chapman(pre1976), Wilson (pre1976).

SOURCES:

Lashmar M. 1983. Updates from Operations Branch Files, 1975 to 1981. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver, B.C and various authors (see sources section), 1976 to 1977.

Marshall, D.E. Preliminary catalogues of Salmon Streams and Spawning escapements of Statistical Areas 13(Campbell River), 16(Pender Harbour), 15(Powell River), and 28(Howe Sound - Burrard Inlet).

Technical Report Series PAC/D-77-1, PAC/D-76-1,2 and 4,
 * CH=Chinook; CO=Coho; CH=Chum; SK=Sockeye; PK=Pink;

Details concerning the nature and locations of these and other local projects are available from the Salmonid Enhancement Program, Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Vancouver and from the Ministry of Environment, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Province of British Columbia, Victoria.

Groundfish

Resource

Due to closures and a lack of grounds suitable for trawling, the South Mainland Coast groundfish harvest is minor compared to the remainder of the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait system. Similarly, the Strait of Georgia harvest is small compared to the offshore fishery. Approximately 70% of Strait of Georgia trawl landings occur during the October to March fishery (Westrheim, 1980). Westrheim (1979), Ketchen (1980), and Stocker (1981) provide historical sketches of commercial activity and assess stocks, while Forrester and Ketchen (1963), Forrester and Smith (1979), Ketchen (1979), and Westrheim (1980) focus specifically on the trawl fishery.

Dogfish, hake (since 1979) and walleye pollock (since 1976) are the major species harvested. Most dogfish are landed by longline in the waters between Gower Point and Lang Bay, and in Algerine Passage. Midwater hake are trawled off the east and west sides of Lasqueti Island, throughout Malaspina Strait and around northern Harwood Island to Mystery Reef; pollock are trawled in the midwaters of northern Malaspina Strait and past Harwood Island to Mystery Reef. Midwater and bottom trawling are closed throughout most of the study area north of a line connecting Shelter Point and Lund, and bottom trawling is prohibited south and west of Texada Island. Rockfish, lingcod, Pacific cod, and small quantities of sablefish are caught by longline. Although rockfish and lingcod may be taken wherever suitable habitat exists, most activity occurs north of Texada Island.

Dogfish excepted, landing statistics for Areas 15 and 16 ("Minor Areas" in the groundfish fishery) for most of the 1960's and 1970's are unavailable due to the grouping of the data by Major or Minor Areas (e.g. 12, 13, 15 and 16). Annual Area 16 dogfish catches for 1973 to 1978 inclusive averages 355.2 tonnes, but fluctuated from 5.1 to 962.2 tonnes per year, whereas Area 15 landings ranged from nil (for three years) to an average of 209.7 tonnes for the remaining three years (Saunders, pers. comm.). In Table 26, 1979 to 1982 values for the South Mainland Coast are compared with the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait region as a whole. Combines, Areas 15 and 16 accounted for 10% of the total regional catch (cf Westrheim (1980) who found that Minor Areas 12, 13, 15, 16 for the 1960 to 1977 years accounted for 6% of the landings for the Strait of Georgia and Juan de Fuca), with Area 16 alone contributing 8%. Table 27 presents the average annual catches by species for 1979 to 1982 for Areas 15, 16 and the Area 29 Sechelt locality.

TABLE 26. GROUND FISH FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: ANNUAL COMMERCIAL CATCH (TONNES), 1979 to 1982, RELATIVE TO STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Year	South Main- land Coast *		13	East Coast *	South Coast *	28	29	Total All Areas
	15	16		Vancouver Is. 14,17,18	Vancouver Is. 19, 20			
1979	251.6	459.5	120.0	3,846.6	1,413.3	58.5	1,475.1	7,624.6
1980	120.6	388.4	180.8	2,393.3	1,550.6	63.3	701.2	5,398.2
1981	23.0	449.0	158.8	1,538.3	1,603.3	14.5	1,858.8	5,645.7
1982	81.4	660.7	169.7	3,221.9	1,012.3	22.4	174.2	5,342.6
	119.2	489.4	157.3	2,750.0	1,394.9	39.7	1,052.3	6,002.8

NOTES: Includes trawl, longline and trap landings of species found only in Areas 15 and 16, less miscellaneous species; does not include handline and troll.

* Other folio areas included for comparison.

SOURCES: Smith, J.E., 1982; Leaman, J.E., 1979-1981. Catch and effort statistics of the Canadian groundfish fishery on the Pacific coast in 1978-1981 (annual reports). Technical Report nos. 891, 961, 1032, and 1124. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

Leaman, J.E., 1983. Personal communication. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

TABLE 27 GROUND FISH FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: ANNUAL COMMERCIAL CATCH^a (TONNES),
1979 TO 1982, RELATIVE TO THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Species	15					16					Total All Areas				
	1979	1980	1981	1982	\bar{x}	1979	1980	1981	1982	\bar{x}	1979	1980	1981	1982	\bar{x}
Pacific cod	-- ^c	0.1	-- ^c	0.2	-- ^c	1.0	1.3	-- ^c	0.2	0.9	1184.9	1607.3	1744.2	1008.7	1386.3
Dogfish	245.7	116.1	11.4	36.5	102.4	410.8	276.5	165.5	297.7	287.6	4325.9	2100.0	763.5	1240.4	2107.4
Hake		0.3	15.2	35.3	12.7	24.5	100.0	98.5	355.6	145.9	516.3	508.4	2408.6	2823.8	1564.3
Walleye pollock				3.8	1.0	2.5		178.2	11.4	50.9	1339.3	1055.7	566.1	100.1	765.3
Rockfish ^b	4.7	3.3	1.6	3.0	3.2	15.1	8.7	4.0	5.1	8.2	185.8	76.8	83.1	74.6	105.1
Lingcod	0.2	0.6	0.1	2.7	0.9	0.1	0.2	2.7		0.8	36.1	39.3	70.2	84.4	57.5
Sablefish	1.0	--			0.3	0.4	0.6			0.2	34.4	10.6	9.6	10.5	16.3
Total	251.6	120.5	28.3	81.5	120.5	459.4	388.4	448.9	670.0	491.7	7622.7	5398.1	5645.3	5342.5	6002.2

NOTES: a. Species trawled - hake, pollock, dogfish, Pacific cod. All species caught by longline except hake and pollock. Species trapped - sablefish, lingcod and rockfish. Table includes trawl, longline and trap landings of species found only in Areas 15 and 16, less miscellaneous species. A portion of Area 29, dogfish landings are caught within study area (Sechelt locality - 1979 - 127.0 t, 1980 - 52.7 t, 1981 - 122.2 t, 1982 - 112.0 t, 1979-1982 - 103.5 t. Walleye pollock 1979-1982 landings - 10.9 t. (1980).

b. includes two or more species.

c. -- = <.1.

SOURCES: Smith, J.E. 1979-1981; Leaman, J.E. 1982. Catch and effort statistics of the Canadian groundfish fishery on the Pacific coast in 1979-1981 (annual reports) Technical Report Nos. 891, 961, 1032, and 1124. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

Saunders, M. 1983. Personal communication. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

Recreational groundfish harvesting is directed primarily toward rockfish and lingcod. Although both species are present throughout the study area, most of the rockfish harvesting occurs north of Texada Island, while lingcod fishing occurs as far south as Lasqueti Island. Reliable recreational groundfish catch estimates are now available from the Tidal Sportfishing Diary Program (Bijsterveld, 1983, MacGregor, 1982). Table 28 suggests that, in 1982, 26% of the total Strait of Georgia and Juan de Fuca lingcod and rockfish landings originated from Areas 15 and 16, with the latter contributing 25% of the regional total.

TABLE 28 GROUND FISH FISHERY SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: SPORT CATCH
(NOS. OF FISH) FOR 1982 RELATIVE TO THE STRAIT OF
GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Species	South Main- land Coast		13	East Coast* S. Coast		28	29	Total All Areas
	15**	16		Vancouver Island 14,17,18	Vancouver Island 19,20			
Lingcod	3,372	29,975	22,024	51,925	14,940	8,279	4,389	134,904
Rockfish	8,208	61,936	26,814	92,681	34,224	25,289	9,107	258,759
Total	11,580	91,911	48,838	144,606	49,664	33,568	13,496	393,663

* Other folio areas for comparison.

** Fishery Statistical Areas.

Source: Bijsterveld, L. 1983. Personal communication. Tidal sportfishing diary program data. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver.

Habitat Requirements

Pacific cod

Pacific cod, the long-time mainstay of the domestic trawl fishery, is the only true cod in the North Pacific and is similar in appearance to its more famous cousin in the North Atlantic. In Canadian waters it is close to the southern limit of its range and occupies intermediate depths along the continental shelf. It is fast-growing and

short-lived. Pacific cod reach commercial size as 2-3 year-olds and mature at about the same age. Few cod live beyond 5 or 6 years of age as the natural mortality rate is relatively high (possibly as much as 50% per year). With few age groups, cod populations exhibit considerable instability. Large and almost cyclical fluctuations in abundance have a profound effect on the annual success of fishing. As yet these fluctuations cannot be reliably predicted.

Pacific cod spawn in February and March, the eggs being fertilized in the water column. To date no fertilized eggs have been observed or collected in the sea but laboratory evidence suggests that cod eggs incubate on the bottom. Bottom temperatures on spawning grounds in British Columbia are usually 7-8°C.

In general, small cod eat plankton (euphausiids and shrimp) and larger fish eat crabs, shrimp and other fish (mainly herring and sandlance). Cod tend to disperse for feeding and to congregate for spawning. Similarly, they move into deeper water in autumn and return to shallow water in spring.

Lingcod

The lingcod is widely distributed along the continental shelf from Mexico to the western Gulf of Alaska, but the centre of abundance appears to be off British Columbia. It occurs from the inter-tidal zone to depths of 366 m (200 fm). Adult tagging programs suggest that lingcod are relatively non-migratory, forming numerous large, localized stocks. Other studies suggest that pre-spawning aggregation, spawning activity, and incubation occur from November to April.

Lingcod spawn in rocky, current-swept areas, depositing their egg masses in crevices. These egg clusters are defended by the male. After a 2-3 month pelagic stage, larval lingcod assume a bottom-dwelling life. Growth rate is relatively rapid in the early years of life, so that commercial size is reached at 3-5 years of age. The majority of lingcod mature at 4-5 years of age, or a length of 65-76 cm. They cease to be of significance in commercial landings beyond the age of 10-12 years, but may live as long as 18 years.

Lingcod are fished commercially in Canadian waters primarily by bottom trawl and handline or troll methods. During 1968-79, lingcod comprised an average of 11% of the total groundfish landings, excluding halibut. As well as being of commercial interest, lingcod are also landed by recreational fishermen using jig, troll and spear fishing gear.

Spiny Dogfish

The spiny dogfish range extends from southern California to the Gulf of Alaska; it is most abundant between southern Oregon and Dixon Entrance. Dogfish are characterized by slow growth, a low birth rate and a long life span. The young are born after a uniquely long gestation period of nearly two years. The young dogfish diet begins with planktonic organisms, yet adults too have been observed eating planktonic euphausiids. Principal foods include herring, hake, sandlance, and a wide variety of invertebrates such as crabs, shrimp and octopus. Males mature at a length of 62 cm or in their 25th year. During the 1979 Strait of Georgia fishery, the average size was 84 cm and 102 cm for males and females respectively. The dogfish's low reproductive rate makes it particularly sensitive to overfishing, thus the harvest must be carefully monitored.

Dogfish have been fished commercially for over 100 years, beginning in the 1870's when the liver and body oils were used as a lubricant and fuel for lamps. The major fishery occurred between 1937 and 1949 as a result of a strong market for dogfish livers as a source of Vitamin A. From 1950 to about 1975 the resource remained virtually unexploited. New foodfish markets abroad, increased dogfish landings briefly from 1976 to 1979, but poor 1980 markets reduced the landings once again. Although a significant fishery still occurs within the Strait of Georgia, elsewhere along the coast, especially in Hecate Strait, the species remains unexploited and interferes with other commercial fisheries. The impact of dogfish as a predator on other groundfish and herring is not fully understood. Little evidence exists to indicate that they are serious predators of salmon.

Rockfish

Rockfish constitute a large, complex portion of west coast bottom-fish resources. There are more than 30 species of which at least seven are of importance to the domestic trawl fishery. As a group they are characterized by slow growth; a prolonged period of immaturity (11-13 years); an even longer time to become commercially viable (13-15 years); an extended life span in which, depending on species, an age of 50-60 years is not uncommon; and a natural mortality rate which in most species is probably less than 5% per annum.

Rockfish occupy a wide range of depths, but individual species occupy more restricted ranges from intermediate depths on the continental shelf (73-110 m) to the upper continental slope (183-457 m).

The frequent overlap of their distributions often results in conflicting management policies for different species. The basic biological parameters of most rockfish species are not well known, particularly the relationship between spawning stock and recruitment. It was only recently that rockfish (except Pacific ocean perch) warranted study because of increased economic importance to Canadian fishermen). Although composed of many age groups, rockfish stocks are highly vulnerable to over-exploitation. Indeed, many were decimated during the years when uncontrolled foreign fleets were present off British Columbia (1965-1976). Particularly hard hit were the stocks of Pacific ocean perch located off Dixon Entrance, off the west coast of Vancouver Island and in Queen Charlotte Sound. Critical information on recruiting rates to determine the sustained level of fishing tolerable is still needed.

Pacific Hake

Pacific hake have only recently (1979) begun to be exploited in the Strait of Georgia to meet the demand for less expensive white-fleshed fish. Common along the west coast of North America, studies suggest the existence of three major stocks - one in the Strait of Georgia, a second in Puget Sound and the third in the offshore coastal waters between the Gulf of California and the Gulf of Alaska.

Within the Strait of Georgia, hake spawn between March and May in the deep waters between Gabriola and Texada islands (the recent Strait of Georgia fishery occurs at this time). After about eight days, the pelagic eggs hatch. Most of the larvae rear in the central strait, feeding on copepods or copepod eggs by early summer. Juveniles mature at four years, spawn, congregate briefly in schools and then disperse by fall.

Offshore, spawning occurs off California, although the appearance of one and two year-olds suggests the possibility of a local stock off the B.C. coast. Older, larger individuals (four to six-year + classes) predominate in the northern portions of the range. Eggs hatch after three days and larval feeding commences by spring. The adult diet consists chiefly of euphausiids and sand lance, but may also include herring, smelt, anchovy and shrimp. Hake are believed to be essentially nocturnal feeders.

Adults inhabit depths from the surface to 900 metres, but seem to prefer the midwaters in association with dogfish, their major predator, and walleye pollock.

Walleye Pollock

Walleye pollock is a recent foodfish. It occurs in both mid-water and on the bottom at intermediate depths. There appear to be several stocks in the Canadian zone, but as yet their inter-relationships are not fully understood. It is possible that the adults, which spawn (in midwater) in the Strait of Georgia may make their way out of the strait to the west coast of Vancouver Island in spring and summer. Georgia Strait aging results suggest the existence of one stock from Texada to Point Roberts, but with different age groups being harvested in that area.

Like Pacific cod, pollock off British Columbia are near the southern limit of their range. Their life span is relatively short; maturity is reached in 2-4 years; there are as few as 3-5-year classes in unexploited stocks; natural mortality rate is relatively high (45%) and there are substantial variations in recruitment. These factors produce much instability in the populations; predictions of abundance are difficult.

Other Finfish

Herring

Hourston's extensive 1977 and 1982 bibliographies reference reports describing various aspects of the British Columbia herring fishery; Hourston and Haegele (1980) describe both herring biology and the past and present fisheries. Selected references can be found in the Sources section.

The reopening of the herring fishery in 1971 following the late 1960's collapse brought a changeover from reduction processing to foreign marketing of herring roe. Herring, which have been traditionally intercepted on their fall migration routes and holding grounds, are now taken in winter or early spring on the immediate approaches to their spawning grounds. Due to the difficulty in timing the harvest to ensure quality roe plus the efficiency of the fishery, a very short but extensive harvest has developed. The winter Strait of Georgia food fishery focuses on herring migrating to the spawning grounds, while the bait fishery coincides with the longline food fishery. As Table 29 illustrates, commercial herring fishing on the South Mainland Coast has been initially non-existent since 1977-78, with only minor previous landings. A notable exception occurred during the 1983 Area 15 roe herring harvest, when 3200 tons were landed. The Copeland Islands-Lund area, Blubber Bay, the Secret Cove vicinity and Quarry, Green, Vananda and Blind bays have all experienced past activity.

TABLE 29 HERRING FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: ANNUAL (SHORT TONS)
COMMERCIAL FISHERY CATCH, 1974 TO 1983 RELATIVE TO THE STRAIT
OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

	South Mainland Coast		East Coast [*] Vancouver Is.		South Coast Vancouver Is.	
Year	15	16	13	17,17,18	19, 20	All Areas
<u>Food and Bait Fishery (sales slip landings)</u>						
1975-76	10	141	1,018	4,270		5,339
1976-77		39	539	4,953	10	5,541
1977-78		29	4,055	10,654		14,738
1978-79			1,831	11,719		13,550
1979-80			2,300	2,114		5,525
1980-81			100	5,995		6,095
1981-82			100	6,074		6,174
1982-83			50	1,288		1,438
\bar{x}	1	26	1,249	6,035	1	7,301
<u>Roe Herring Fishery (sales slip landings/hailed tonnages)</u>						
1974	2	69	472	3,713	4	
1975	49	491	367	5,834		
1976	65	1	166	7,643/7306		7,306
1977				12,723/12,004		12,004
1978	59	17		11,847/12,812		12,812
1979				7,537/5,500		5,500
1980				4,047		4,047
1981				9,907		9,907
1982				9,400		9,400
1983	3,200			12,233		15,433
\bar{x} (1983- hailed landings only)	400	0	0	9,151	0	9,551

* Other coastal folio study areas for comparison.

The recreational herring fishery consists of two activities - the food harvest, and the bait fishery. The food harvest occurs mainly during March or April when the herring congregate to spawn; 50% of the sport catch may be taken at this time. The bait fishery occurs during the remainder of the year. The following 1981 herring sport catch statistics (numbers of fish) from the Tidal Sportfishing Diary Program (Bijsteweld, pers. comm.), suggest that the South Mainland Coast's contribution is minor.

South Mainland Coast			East Coast [*] Vancouver Is.	South Coast Vancouver Is.		
15	16	13	14, 17, 18	19, 20	28, 29	All Areas
0	0	36,008	101,869	2,072	0	139,949

* Other coastal folio study areas for comparison.

Habitat Requirements

Herring spawning occurs on a limited number of intertidal and shallow subtidal areas scattered throughout the Pacific coast. While few areas appear to provide suitable spawning habitat, those which do are heavily utilized. Herring spawn in winter and early spring when salinity and temperature are reduced. Adhesive eggs are deposited onto seaweeds, primarily rockweed (Fucus), Japweed (Sargassum), and eelgrass (Zostera). The deposition of eggs can range from above low water to 10-15 m below. Due to predation by marine birds and intertidal fish, and to the dislodging of egg-laden seaweed during storms, egg survival during the two to three-week incubation period does not exceed 30%.

During the larval phase, mortality is estimated to reach 99%. Evidence suggests this is chiefly due to larvae being carried offshore by surface currents, the lack of food (plankton), and predation. By summer, juveniles school in shallow bays and inlets, typically near kelp beds, feeding in surface waters at dawn and dusk on small zooplankton (copepods, euphausiids and amphipods).

Near the end of their first summer, herring migrate from the Strait of Georgia via the Juan de Fuca Strait to offshore feeding grounds, mainly off the lower west coast of Vancouver Island. A small number of herring remain behind to form minor resident populations. The fall return migration begins in their third or fourth year. Strait of Georgia herring remain separate from stocks elsewhere on the

coast during their spawning migrations. Thus all production and recruitment of the fishery stock must come from within the Strait system.

Hourston and Leaman (1979) list the localities where herring spawning has been recorded to the present. Similarly, Haegele (pers. comm.) has produced a series of maps and charts depicting spawning ground utilization by years. The Fish Spawning and Rearing Series of the Coastal Resource Folio shows those South Mainland Coast areas more recently utilized. Historical data of spawning intensity, timing, and local habitat characteristics are currently being analyzed by researchers of the Pacific Biological Station (Fisheries and Oceans Canada).

On individual herring spawning grounds, no clear relationship exists between spawning intensity and the number of spawning days. This makes the prediction of the timing and abundance of local, individual roe herring fisheries difficult.

It is suggested that changes in preferred spawning grounds are related to broad-scale variations in environmental conditions. It is not known, however, if such shifts are the result of changes in herring migratory patterns or in variable survival rates for different spawning grounds. The differences in times of spawning from year to year appear to be related more to local rather than regional environmental conditions.

Shellfish

Resource

Bernard (1982) and Fralick and Tillapough (1979) review the current provincial shellfish stocks, fishery and mariculture industry. The South Mainland Coast supports a variety of shellfish, including oysters, geoducks and other clams, shrimps, prawns, and crabs. Geoducks, oysters, and other clams inhabit the inter- or subtidal zones of virtually all the study area islands.

Commercial activity is divided between the less intensive harvest of wild stocks and intensive mariculture concentrated mostly in Okeover Inlet. Pendrell Sound has been set aside as a reserve for oyster spat production for the mariculture industry. The commercial catch statistics for 1975 to 1981 summarized in Table 30a show that geoduck clams landed in the study area composed 33% of the regional total, while all other clams landed composed 38% of the total. In contrast, 8% of the oysters shucked (both wild and cultured oysters) in the Strait of Georgia-Juan de Fuca Strait region originated from the South Mainland Coast.

Shellfish are more commonly harvested recreationally near population centres or more accessible locations. Reliable recreational shellfish landings recently have become available through the Tidal Sportfishing Diary Program (MacGregor, 1982; Bijsterweld, 1983). During 1981, 20 to 22% of the region's recreation clam, abalone and oyster landings originated from Statistical Areas 15 and 16 (Table 30b).

Habitat Requirements

Shrimps and Prawns

Five shrimp and one prawn species are fished commercially in British Columbia waters. Although shrimp are found in a wide variety of habitats, from rock to mud and pelagic to demersal, they are associated more frequently with the softer substrates. Shrimp are of great value to the diets of commercial fish, marine mammals, and large invertebrates. In turn, shrimp prey upon other crustaceans, many types of invertebrates, and recycle dead or decaying organic matter. No detailed ecological studies exist because of difficulties in species identification.

Commercial shrimp are fished mainly by trawls over muddy or sandy bottoms in 95 to 135 metres of water, whereas prawns are taken almost exclusively by traps. Both shrimps and prawns are fished throughout the year, although their respective harvests peak in summer and spring. Within the South Mainland Coast, shrimp trawling is confined to the waters northeast of Savary and Hernando islands. In contrast, prawns are trapped throughout the study area. Since 1976, prawn trap versus shrimp trawl landings provincially have increased from 2% to 54% of the total landings. The majority of the area shrimp and prawn landings are from Area 16. Recreational harvesting in Areas 15 and 16 for 1981 (the only year for which data are available) was minimal.

Clams

The manila clam lives on mud-gravel beaches at about the mid-tide mark while its close relative, the native littleneck clam, is typically found in a mixture of fine sand, shell and gravel in the lower half of the intertidal zone. The main populations of the large geoduck clam are found in subtidal sand or mixed sand-mud, but can also be found in the lower part of an intertidal beach. The butter clam is found in many types of sediments but is most abundant in the lower third of the intertidal zone of beaches and bars composed of a mixture of sand, broken shell and gravel.

Considered either as a group or by species, the commercial clam harvest of the South Mainland Coast contributes 33% of the geoducks, 53% of the Japanese littleneck or manila clams, and 64% of "mixed" clams (Table 30a) to the regional total. Returns from the recreational fishery during 1981 (Table 30b) totalled 22% of the regional catch.

Crab

The edible crab lives on firm sand from the low tide mark to as deep as 190 metres. Spawning occurs in late fall or early winter with eggs being carried by the female until hatching in the spring. Crab larvae swim freely among plankton for three or more months before settling to the bottom. The adult diet includes clams, marine worms and small fish. The Pacific, edible or Dungeness crab is generally trapped on the bottom in less than 38 m of water.

Limited crab habitat exists within the study area. Although historic concentrations have been reported in the Thormanby Islands area, Porpoise Bay is the only commercial harvest area. Tables 30a and 30b record the commercial and recreational landings from a local and regional perspective.

Oysters

Pacific oysters normally inhabit intertidal flats of firm mud, sand, or gravel, although they are often grown commercially at the lowest tidal levels. Oysters require relatively sheltered surroundings to prevent being dislodged or buried in the sediment. Following reproduction, the microscopic larvae or spat (essentially miniature unshelled adults) settle on to suitable surfaces (a process known as spatfall). Pendrell Sound has the only consistently large spatfall in the study area and has, therefore, been designated as a Shellfish Reserve.

Commercial permit harvesting of wild stocks (other than in Pendrell Sound) is limited to scattered populations sustained through local spatfalls. Most wild stocks are reserved for the recreational harvest.

The commercial shellfish industry, therefore concentrates on artificial propagation or mariculture which provides a variety of surfaces (or cultch) on which spat from Pendrell Sound can settle and grow. Commercial production for 1975 to 1980 and recreational landings for 1981 are presented in Tables 30a and 30b respectively. Area 15 landings dominated the commercial harvest, probably reflecting the distribution of mariculture leases, whereas Area 16 landings dominated the recreational harvest, likely reflecting the distribution. Foreshore leases for mariculture are shown on the accompanying Land/Water Status Map series.

TABLE 30a SHELLFISH FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST: AVERAGE ANNUAL COMMERCIAL CATCH (NEAREST TONNE)
OF MAJOR SPECIES, 1975 TO 1981, RELATIVE TO THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEMS

Species	South Mainland Coast		13	East Coast [*] Vancouver Is.		South Coast Vancouver Is.		28	29	Total All Areas
	15	16		14,17,18		19, 20				
Shrimp and prawns ^a	4	31	12	62		9		66	70	254
Butter clam	2	1	7	115		5				130
Japanese littleneck (Manila)	138	16	44	82		12				292
Native littleneck	20	14	43	50		10				137
Mixed clams ^c	39	23	19	12		5				98
Total Clams	199	54	113	321		32		66	70	657
Geoduck clam (1977-1981)	142	108	64	359		86				759
Abalone			1			4				5
Crabs		3	2	58		74		33	249	419
Oysters ^b (1975-1980)	5	1		51		18				75
Sea urchins (1979 only)				266		47				313

NOTES: ^a captured primarily by trap

^b 1981 data unavailable by Statistical Area. Catch expressed in nearest 1000 U.S. gallons shucked. Includes both cultured (from leases) and wild oysters (from permits).

^c Includes all other species.

* Other coastal folio study areas for comparison.

SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans. 1975-1981. British Columbia catch statistics (annual reports). Vancouver.

TABLE 30b RECREATIONAL SHELLFISH FISHERY OF SOUTH MAINLAND COAST (NUMBERS) FOR 1981 RELATIVE TO THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA STRAIT SYSTEM

Species	South Mainland Coast		13	East Coast*	South Coast	28, 29	Total All Areas
	15	16		Vancouver Is. 14,17,18	Vancouver Is. 19, 20		
Shrimps and prawns				4,260	19,132	5,477	28,869
Clams	8,327	69,903	17,151	238,544	14,342	1,043	349,310
Abalone	274	2,125		7,953	691		11,043
Crabs		6,037	5,719	58,976	31,753	27,240	129,725
Oysters	1,556	63,666	20,585	234,731	5,454	7,546	333,538
Other	274	2,058		46,461			48,793

* Other coastal resource folio study areas for comparison.

SOURCE: Bijsterveld, L. 1983. Personal communication. Tidal sport fishing diary program data.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver.

Species Names

In this report, common names are used throughout but, in order to avoid confusion, the scientific names are given below. Common names of fish are those of Hart (1973), shrimp of Butler (1980), and clams of Quayle and Bourne (1972).

Salmon

Chum	<i>Oncorhynchus keta</i>
Chinook	<i>O. tshawytscha</i>
Coho	<i>O. kisutch</i>
Pink	<i>O. gorbuscha</i>
Sockeye	<i>O. nerka</i>
Coastal Cutthroat trout	<i>Salmo clarki clarki</i>
Steelhead	<i>S. gairdneri</i>
Pacific herring	<i>Clupea pallasii</i>

Groundfish/Midwater Fish

Pacific cod	<i>Gadus macrocephalus</i>
Walleye pollock	<i>Theragra chalcogramma</i>
Pacific hake	<i>Merluccius productus</i>
Tomcod	<i>Microgadus proximus</i>
Slender sole	<i>Lyopsetta exilis</i>
English (Lemon) sole	<i>Parophrys vetulis</i>
Flathead sole	<i>Hippoglossoides elassodon</i>
Rex sole	<i>Glyptocephalus zachirus</i>
Rock sole	<i>Lepidopsetta bilineata</i>
Dover sole	<i>Microstomus pacificus</i>
Sand sole	<i>Psettichthys melanostictus</i>
Arrowtooth flounder	<i>Atheresthes stomias</i>
Butter sole	<i>Isopsetta isolepis</i>
Starry flounder	<i>Platichthys stellatus</i>
Speckled sanddab	<i>Citharichthus stigmaeus</i>
Pacific halibut	<i>Hippoglossus stenolepis</i>
Rockfish	<i>Scorpaenidae</i>
Spiny Dogfish	<i>Squalus ocanthias</i>
Lingcod	<i>Ophiodon elongatus</i>

Shellfish

Prawn
Shrimp

Pandalus Platyceros
P. jordani
P. borealis
P. hypsinotus
P. danae
Pandalopsis dispar

Edible (Dungeness) crab

Cancer magister

Razor clam
Butter clam
Manila clam
Littleneck clam
Horse clam
Geoduck clam

Siliqua patula
Saxidomus giganteus
Venerupis japonica
Protothaca staminea
Tresus capax
Panope generosa

Oyster

Crassostrea gigas

Sea Urchin

Strongylocentrotus franciscanus

Mussels

Mytilus edulis

Red squid
Opal squid

Beryteuthis magister
Loligo opanescens

Octopus

Octopus spp.

Abalone

Haliotis rufescens

5.5 RECREATIONAL RESOURCES

The Sunshine Coast provides abundant opportunities for outdoor recreation. There are numerous bays, harbours, scenic shorelines, shore process features and wilderness areas to attract recreationalists. Although not abundant, there are large sandy beaches within the study area that are heavily used during the summer months. The backshore clearings are important for camping and upland activities for boaters and are, in some areas, the only means of access to the shorezone. The major harbours are developed but still provide a suitable environment for viewing, nature appreciation, and boating; further, many of the rocky coasts contain a diversity of marine life that attracts divers. Most of this coast is rated by the Canada Land Inventory as having moderate to very high capability for outdoor recreation (Canada, Department of Environment, 1978).

5.5.1 COMPETITION FOR SPACE AND RESOURCES

Competing for the resources of the study area are recreationalists from local communities, Greater Vancouver, and the influx of tourists. Currently, tourism within the Strait of Georgia region adds almost two million people annually. In 1979, about 83 thousand households within the region owned one or more recreational boats; also in 1973, nearly ten thousand tourist boaters visited the coastal waters of the Strait. By 1985, the boater population is expected to increase by 32% (Eby, 1979); the demand for boating facilities and associated coastal recreation areas may be equally high in view of the projected population growth.

Doubtless, competition for resources will be manifested at three levels: a) between major classes of activities (i.e. recreational use of shorelines vs industrial development), b) between sub-groups within one activity (i.e. recreational boat noise vs shoreline recreational cottage areas), and c) between individuals within one sub-group (i.e. crowding at campsites or beaches). Efforts to accommodate the increase in recreation demands may include myriad forms of management approaches, but as evidence from other jurisdictions shows, only by reserving a range of recreational areas, (from virgin wild land to high-use sites managed according to multiple or compatible-use principles), will all recreational needs be satisfied.

The competition for space and resources is currently most acute in several of the natural harbours. Industrial developments, commercial operations and residential developments are often attracted to these areas because of the degree of coastal protection provided, and by the economics of construction. While much of the foreshore of the study coastline remains unalienated, numerous authorized and unauthorized structures have been constructed.

These structures include concrete ramps for boat launching, wharves, floats, and floating buildings tied to the foreshore. Occasionally, evidence of excavation and levelling by machines is found in the intertidal areas. These occurrences may be incidental to backshore construction projects, or the result of private individuals using intertidal materials for personal projects.

While many important recreational resources are currently protected from alienation within the coastal zone, unofficial areas currently in use, as well as those with significant potential (including scuba diving sites, shore process features, beaches, backshore camping areas, and recreational rivers), remain unprotected. With the predicted population growth, competition for many of the areas will doubtless increase. For instance, expansion of current uses such as log storage, commercial fishing, shoreline residential development, and commercial and industrial construction on the foreshore or backshore zones preempts recreational use as effectively as numerous licenced water withdrawals from rivers prevent river boating or fishing. Beaches become alienated through overuse (crowding), misuse (vehicular traffic), inappropriate use (excavation), or indirectly by the interruption of the longshore sediment transport system that feeds beaches. It is obvious that protection of unique, recreationally valuable sites must occur relatively soon while they still remain, and while the costs of acquisition are not prohibitive.

5.5.2 ACCESS

One of the most pressing coastal zone problems of other jurisdictions (e.g. California, Sweden) is the lack of public access to the shoreline. Although much of the study shoreline is accessible to the public, many regions are virtually inaccessible. A combination of private waterfront ownership, heavy forest cover and rock cliffs precludes the use of many potential recreational areas by the non-boating public. Similarly, marinas with security fences, and adjacent commercial-industrial developments either physically prevent access or render the site physically unattractive for recreational purposes. In other coastal areas, access to the water is either unmarked or inadequate for vehicles and pedestrians. Log booming and storage on the intertidal flats of major estuaries similarly prevents their unobstructed enjoyment while also reducing the habitat of recreational wildlife species. Backshore developments and foreshore leases destroy the wilderness concept and the aesthetics of many sections of scenic coast. While many miles of unobstructed shoreline remain for recreationists wishing to enjoy the scenery and biota of the coastal zone in solitude and beyond sight of human activities, the issuance of new foreshore leases into new areas could in time eliminate all vestiges of isolation in the study area.

5.5.3 POLLUTION

Marine water quality in the study region currently restricts recreational activities in local areas. Sewage outfalls from municipalities and cities are responsible for numerous shellfish closures along the coast. Boat wastes in natural harbours, marinas, as well as wharves contribute to local shellfish harvesting restrictions. Sewage discharged from recreational boats in open waters is not yet identified as problematic, although several heavily used anchorages (e.g. Desolation Sound) evidence poor visual and aesthetic water quality.

Water contact sports (i.e. swimming) conducted in areas of contamination pose definite health risks to recreationists. Leachates from log booming and storage, and effluent from coastal industries threaten the recreational value of coastal waters by jeopardizing the integrity of coastal ecosystems. The consumption of marine and intertidal biota are important recreational activities in this area; water quality, therefore, is of great concern. In many instances, the costs of pollution are external to the originating sources and are thus borne by the recreational community.

5.6 PHYSICAL PROCESSES AND ENERGY

5.6.1 REGIONAL WAVE CLIMATE

An understanding of the potential for a body of water to produce waves under certain conditions is important from several points of view:

Engineers are concerned with wave effects on coastal structures such as breakwaters or wharves, as well as sedimentation of harbours.

Planners are concerned with wave effects on coastal bluffs, the probability of inundation during storms, and the vulnerability of certain shore forms, such as spits, to erosion.

Recreationists are concerned with the stability of coastal bluffs and beaches (fronting recreational properties), marina protection, and the maintenance of sandy beaches.

The following discussion does not attempt to cover the current state of the art in wave theory, but instead reviews what is known about the wave characteristics of the study area. For further, general reading on the subject, Bascom (1980) and Thomson (1981) are excellent laymen's texts. For scientific works of Canadian conditions, reports by the Associate Committee for Research on Shoreline Erosion and Sedimentation (ACROSES) (1980, 1983) and McCann (1980) are available. Thomson (1974-1977) has written an excellent series of articles as well as a text (Thomson, 1981) on the oceanography of the study area. Volume II of the East Coast Vancouver Island Coastal Resources Folio provides a summary of the status of knowledge of wave climate for the western Strait of Georgia (Environment Canada, Lands Directorate, 1981).

Most of the wave climate and wave energy studies in the strait have been concentrated on the eastern shore of Vancouver Island between Victoria and Campbell River. Knowledge obtained from these studies, in some instances, can be applied to the present study area.

Wave Height

Wave height is a function of three variables.

- i) Wind strength - the speed of the generating wind.
- ii) Wind duration - the time the generating wind has been blowing at a particular speed.
- iii) Fetch - the unobstructed area of water over which the generating wind can blow.

Wind Strength

Owens (1980) notes that the direction of the strongest winds is more significant to wave generation than prevailing wind patterns. For coastal British Columbia the stronger winds generally occur in winter. Figures 12 and 13 display the percentage frequency of winds over 30 km/hour for two representative stations: Ballenas Lightstation and Merry Island. Here, winds from the southeasterly quadrant dominate in all seasons. The lower northwesterly component could reflect the sheltering effects of Texada and Lasqueti islands. Regardless, over open water, the less frequent northwesterly maximums can approach the strength of the southeasterlies (Schaefer, 1983 pers. comm.). This was verified earlier by Guenther and Faulkner (1979). They compared all the station records for the Strait of Georgia and concluded:

"...that the strongest recorded winds at most stations in the Strait are southeasterly, but in some months, for example January, at Entrance Island, the strongest winds are northwesterly". The figures also identify the strongest winds observed at each of the stations. In both cases, they are from the southeasterly quadrant and represent the observed extremes for those stations.

The National Building Code sets structural requirements for all buildings in Canada. One of the requirements identified is wind force; all structures must withstand the specified force as a minimum. The forces are calculated as probabilities of being exceeded in any one year. They are based on hourly wind speeds with a 1 in 10, 30 and 100 chance of being exceeded (NRC, 1975). Powell River is the only station in the study area to have calculated values*:

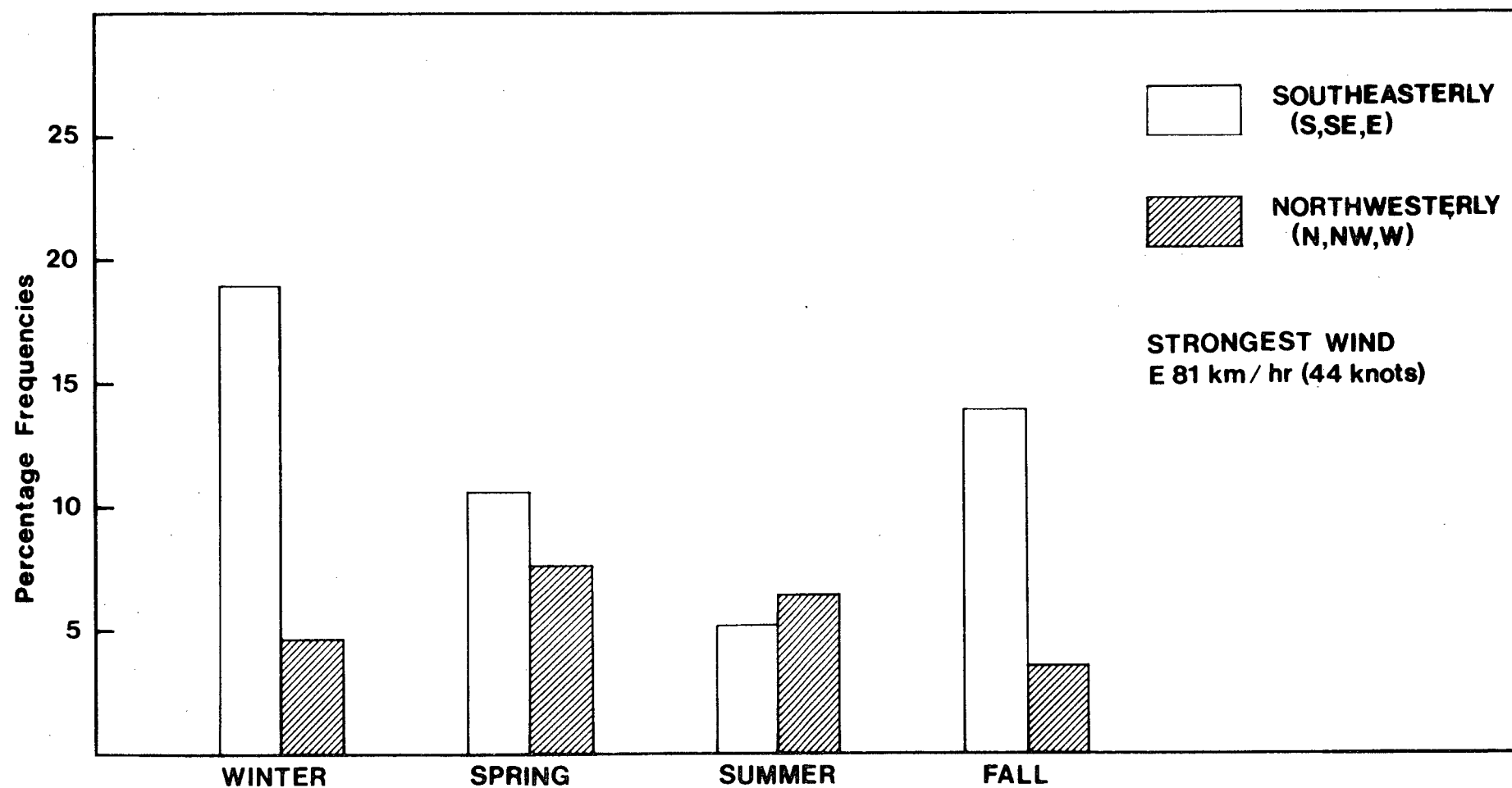
a) 1 in 10	92 km/hr
b) 1 in 30	105 km/hr
c) 1 in 100	119 km/hr

* Calculated from formula for wind pressure: $P = CV^2$
where

C - constant, .0027; V - maximum hourly wind velocity and P - velocity pressure; solved for V. (NRC, 1975)

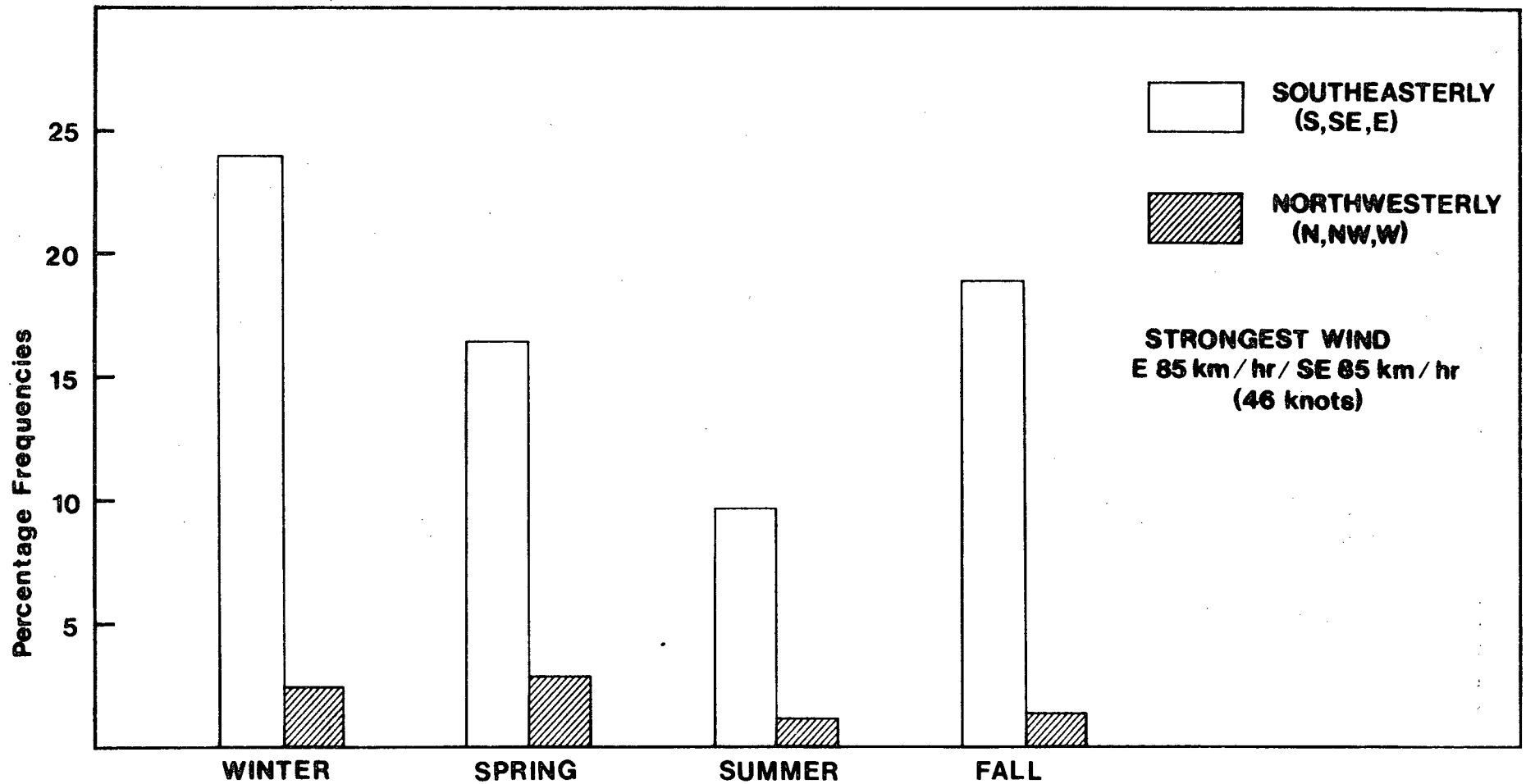


**Figure 12 . Percentage Frequencies of Hours with Wind Speeds 30 km/ hr (17 knots) or Greater
for Ballenas Lightstation (1967 - 80)**



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals 1951-1980- Wind. Volume 5. Atmospheric Environment Service. Downsview.

Figure 13 . Percentage Frequencies of Hours with Wind Speeds 30 km / hr (17 knots) or Greater for Merry Island (1963 - 80)



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals 1951-1980-Wind. Volume 5. Atmospheric Environment Service. Downsview.

Statistically, then, very strong winds are possible. All the values cited represent the more exposed coasts of the study area. Winds in more sheltered areas are highly variable, reflecting local topographic effects rather than seasonal climate. The inlets of the study area are examples.

Most of the inlets of the region are aligned so that they are not affected by the prevailing or even strong wind patterns. The topographic effects are dominant. Of significance are the winter outflow winds called Squamishes. They are primarily associated with polar continental air (or Arctic air) over the interior of the province flowing seaward. This cold, dense air is funnelled through the inlets to produce up to gale force winds. Howe Sound, Jervis and Toba inlets are susceptible to these wind conditions. Few data are available on Squamishes, but measurements taken for Howe Sound are indicative. These measurements show that wind speeds frequently reach 55 km/hr with gusts to over 100 km/hr (Thomson, 1981).

Wind Duration

Hale and Greenwood (1980) state that "waves take a certain length of time to develop over any significant fetch...". Thus the duration of a certain wind speed is critical to the size of waves that can be generated within a given fetch. McCann and Hale (1980) used a minimum of six hours for their wave calculations on eastern Vancouver Island. Hale and McCann (1982) refined this estimate somewhat by observing that "Maximum wave conditions for Craig Bay are therefore generated in a relatively short time (usually much less than six hours)". Harper (1982), on the other hand, noted that one hour should produce significant waves in less exposed sites. These observations are verified by Hale and McCann's (1982) calculations for Craig Bay on eastern Vancouver Island. Table #31 and Table #32, though for an area outside of the present study, reveal the relationship between effective fetch and wind duration to produce maximum wave heights; note that as the velocity increases, the duration decreases. Thomson (1981) also notes that from the sparse data on Squamishes for Howe Sound, it was observed that these winds can persist for up to five days and occur, on average, for five to six days in December and January.

Fetch

The Strait of Georgia is fetch limited for developing large sea waves. The present study area is further sheltered by the presence of Texada and Lasqueti islands. Dunn (1983) defined 95 general fetch units for the study area. Of the straight line fetches measured, 13% were greater than 100 km; all to the southeast quadrant. The southeast quadrant, in total, accounted for 56 of all the measurements made while the northwest quadrant accounted for 38%. These values are significant when one reviews the strong wind data.

TABLE 31 MINIMUM DURATION (MINUTES) TO GENERATE
MAXIMUM WAVE HEIGHTS FOR CRAIG BAY

Direction	Effective Fetch (km)	Wind Speed (km/h)				
		16.1	32.2	48.3	64.4	80.5
W	5.0	55	42	35	31	28
NW	32.1	360	250	200	175	160
N	26.5	320	240	190	170	150
NE	23.8	275	200	170	140	120
E	18.8	235	100	85	75	68

Source: P.B. Hale and S.B. McCann, 1983. "Rhythmic Topography in a Mesotidal, Low-Wave Energy Environment". Journal of Sedimentary Petrology, Vol.52, No.2, June, 1982. pp.415-429.

TABLE 32 MINIMUM FETCH AND DURATION TO PRODUCE FULLY
DEVELOPED SEAS AT VARIOUS WIND SPEEDS

Wind Speed km/h)	18.5	28	37	46	55.5	74	93
Fetch (km)	19	63	139	296	518	1315	2630
Duration (h)	2.4	6	10	16	23	42	69
Average Height (m)	0.3	.8	1.5	2.7	4.3	8.5	14.6
Significant Height ¹ (m)	.4	1.1	2.4	4.3	6.7	13.4	23.8
Average of the highest 10% (m)	.6	1.5	3.1	5.5	8.4	17.4	30.2
Period having the greatest concentration of energy (seconds)	4	6	8	10	12	16	20

¹ The Significant Height is the average height of the highest 1/3 of the existing waves. The maximum wave height is about 1.8 times the significant height.

Source: R.E. Thomson, 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56, Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Ottawa.

Synthesis

The study area is primarily fetch limited in developing large sea waves. The present study area is further sheltered by the presence of Texada and Lasqueti islands play a significant role in reducing available fetch. The largest waves are generated by winds from the southeast or northwest, while dominant waves are from the southeast (Clague and Bornhold, 1980). This correlates with the strong wind directions and longest fetches discussed earlier. Recent studies on the waves of the Strait of Georgia concluded that the maximum height would always be less than 4 m (Hale and McCann, 1982 and Thomson, 1981). A notable exception, however, is waves associated with strong tidal flows and opposing winds, then waves have been known to attain 5 m (Thomson, 1981).

There are good records of actual wave measurements for the study area. Figure 14 shows the calculations for the highest one-third (significant height) and the maximum height of waves probable for each station. Four stations (Powell River, Lund, Gibson's Landing and Fisherman's Cove) represent waves likely in sheltered locations of the study area's outside coast.

Halibut Bank gives values likely for the exposed areas; Roberts Bank provides a comparison. For the sheltered areas significant wave heights never exceeded 1 m over the period of record. In fact, only 10% of the time did they ever exceed .3 m. These values are affected by the number of calm conditions recorded as well. Percentage calms were high for all four stations:

- a) Powell River - 79% calm over three-month record
- b) Lund - 75% calm over six-month record
- c) Gibsons Landing - 98% calm over 12-month period
- d) Fisherman's Cove - 64% calm over 12-month period

Maximum heights probable for these localities are also low; 1.5 m would never be exceeded, while .3 m would only be exceeded 20% of the time. Halibut Bank, on the other hand, exhibits much higher values indicative of the more exposed location. Wave heights exceeded .3 m 60% of the record period, but they were never larger than 1.5 m. Also of significance is that there were no periods of calm during the measurements. Maximum values for the station exceed .3 m with a probable maximum never exceeding 2.4 m.

No direct wave measurements have been made of the inlets in the study area. The longest fetches are generally parallel to the axis of the inlet and protected from waves generated by prevailing winds. Squamish

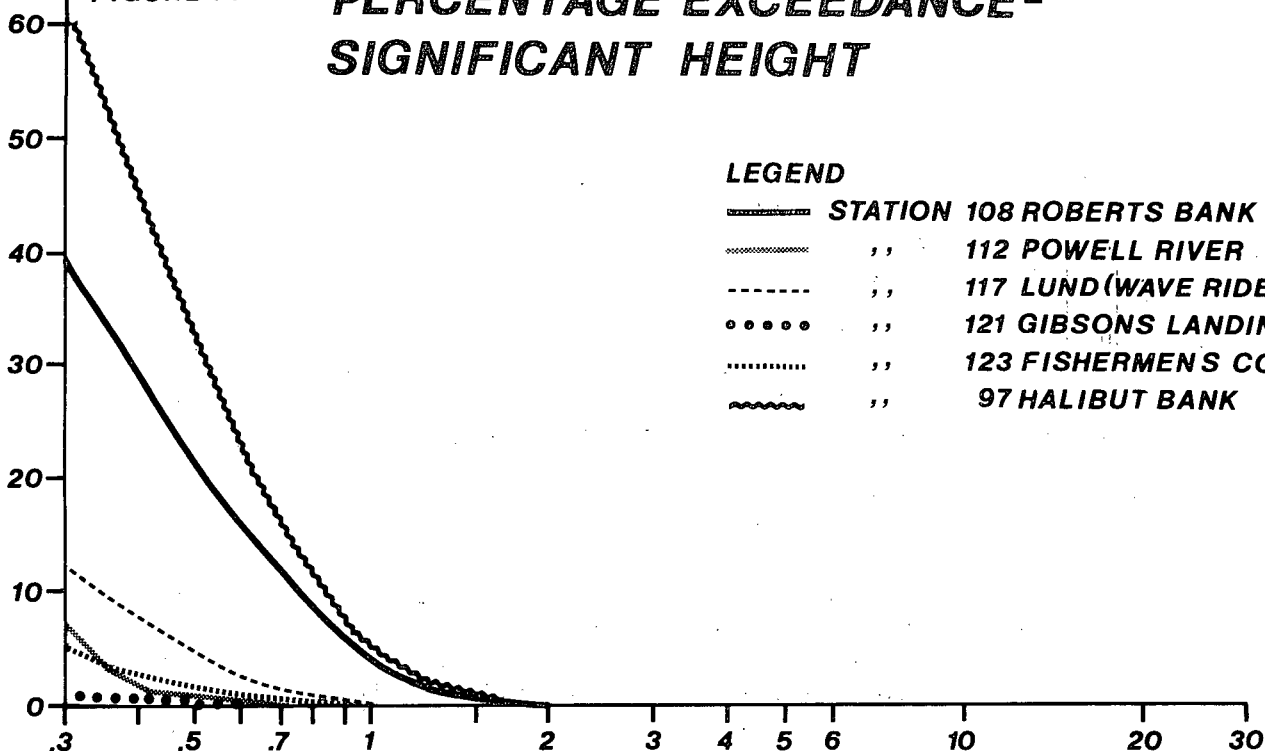
FIGURE 14

PERCENTAGE EXCEEDANCE-SIGNIFICANT HEIGHT

PERCENTAGE EXCEEDANCE

LEGEND

- STATION 108 ROBERTS BANK**
- 112 POWELL RIVER**
- 117 LUND (WAVE RIDER)**
- 121 GIBSONS LANDING**
- 123 FISHERMEN'S COVE**
- 97 HALIBUT BANK**



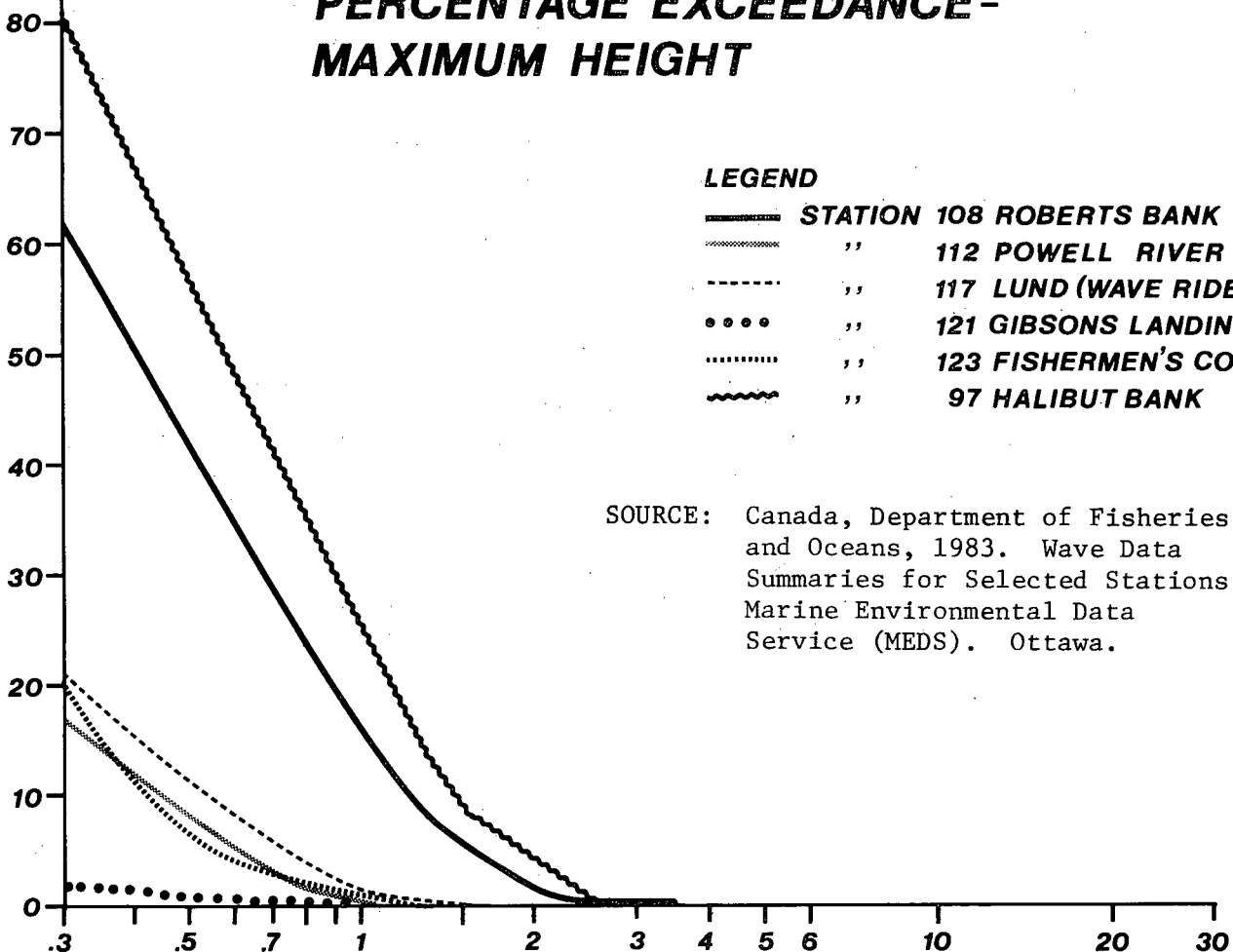
WAVE HEIGHT IN METRES

PERCENTAGE EXCEEDANCE-MAXIMUM HEIGHT

PERCENTAGE EXCEEDANCE

LEGEND

- STATION 108 ROBERTS BANK**
- 112 POWELL RIVER**
- 117 LUND (WAVE RIDER)**
- 121 GIBSONS LANDING**
- 123 FISHERMEN'S COVE**
- 97 HALIBUT BANK**



WAVE HEIGHT IN METRES

SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Selected Stations. Marine Environmental Data Service (MEDS). Ottawa.

winds are the most significant contributing factor to highest wave generation. Waves associated with these winds tend to be of short period and steep. For example, the highest waves probably for Howe Sound are 1.5 m, although 2.5 m waves are possible during the Squamishes (Thomson, 1981).

Wave Energy (See Figure 15)

Wave Period

Thomson (1981) indicates that a great majority of the waves in the Strait of Georgia (off the Fraser River) have periods between two and four seconds. This is confirmed by the wave periods recorded in the present study area (Figures 16 through 21). 76% of the waves had two to four second periods. The remainder of the wave periods were generally less than six seconds. Waves generated in inlets would predominantly be of short periods.

Water Levels

Owens (1980) notes that as tidal range increases, available wave energy can dissipate over a larger vertical area. Maximum tidal ranges in the study area are between 5 and 5.5 m. A notable exception is Porpoise Bay, at the head of Sechelt Inlet; its range is just under 3 m. A complication of these water levels are storm surges; a combination of strong winds and high tides. The most recent surge within the study area was in December 1982. Figure 22 shows the observed tides less the predicted tides for two stations south and west of the study area. The maximum surge level attained was about 1 m above predicted levels. Murty (1983, pers. comm.) states that the return probability of these surges is about 10 to 12 years in certain locations and up to 20 years in others. Steep coasts are generally not adversely affected, but low-lying coasts are highly vulnerable. Storm surges, in effect, are rapid sea level changes.

Figure 3 shows relative sea level changes since the last glaciation while Clague et al (1982), upon reviewing historical evidence and recent data, suggest the following trends:

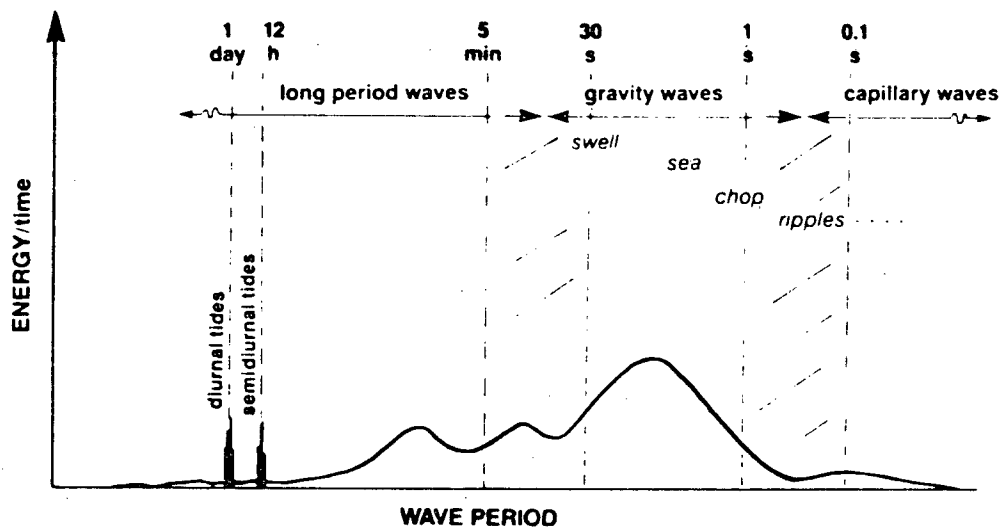
a) Tidal stations

Vancouver, Point Atkinson, Prince Rupert	1-2 mm/yr sea level rise
Tofino, Queen Charlotte City	1-2 mm/yr sea level fall
Port Alberni, Little River, Campbell River, Alert Bay, Port Hardy	fall in sea level
Victoria, Fulford Harbour	little or no change

b) Levelling surveys

Fraser Lowland	1.5 mm/yr subsidence
Victoria-Port Alberni	uplift
Parksville-Campbell River	uplift

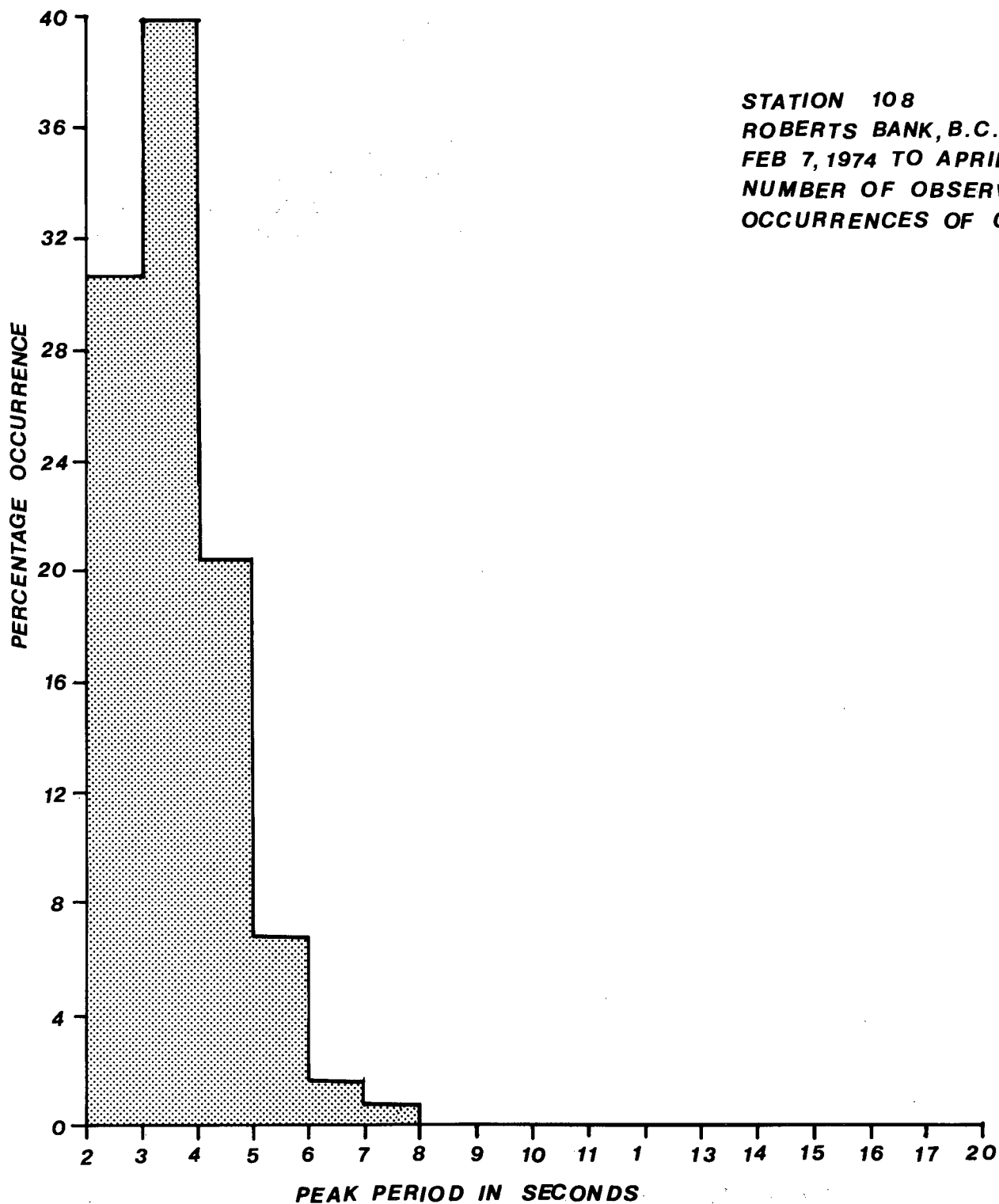
FIGURE 15 POWER SPECTRUM OF RELATIVE AMOUNT OF ENERGY CONTAINED BY WAVES
OVER A RANGE OF WAVE PERIODS



Note: Broken lines show overlap of wave types.
Tidal energy is concentrated within a narrow band of periods near diurnal and semi-diurnal periods. (After Kinsman, 1965).

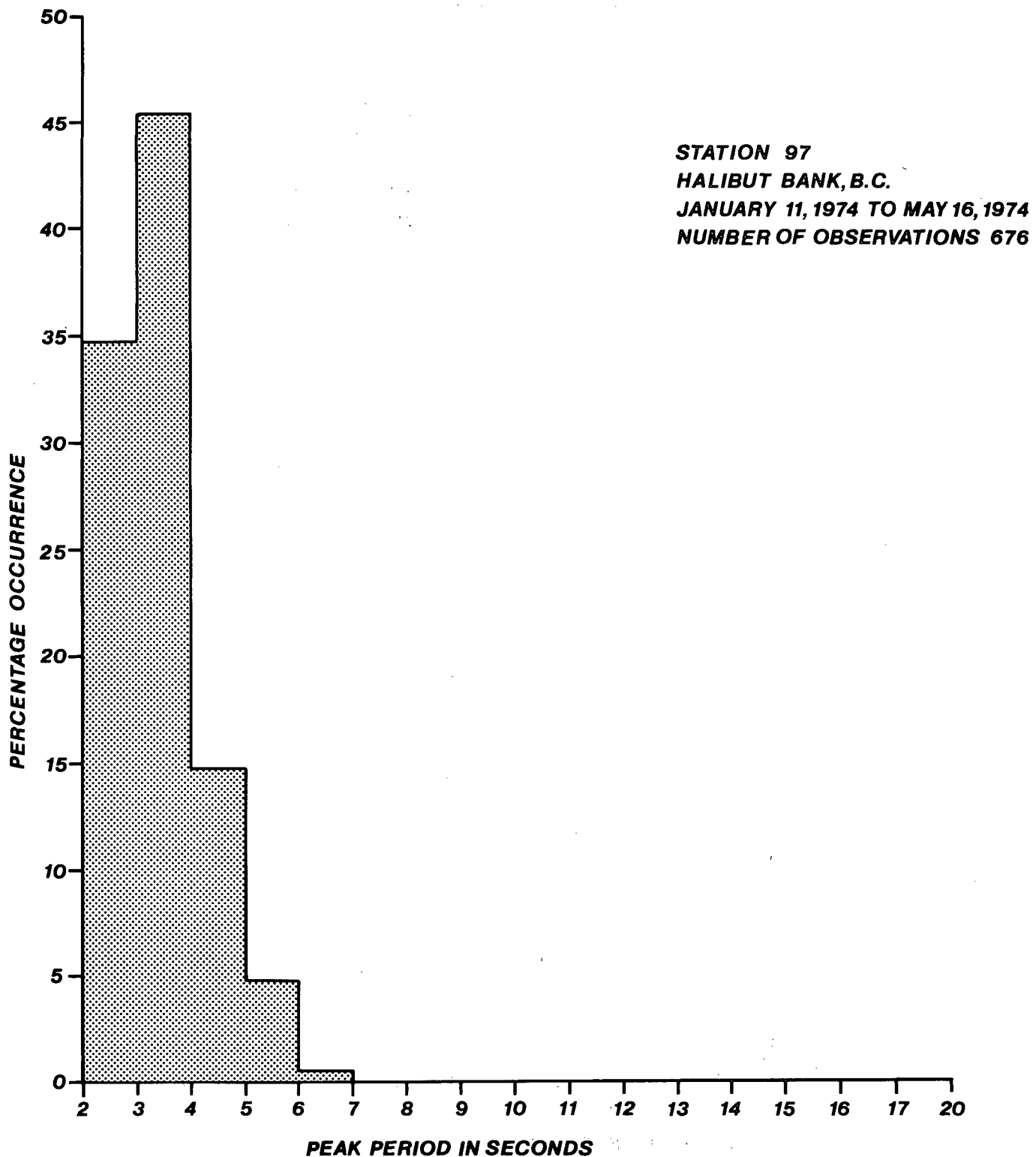
Source: R.E. Thomson, 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56. Fisheries and Oceans Canada. Ottawa. p.89.

FIGURE 16 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, ROBERTS BANK



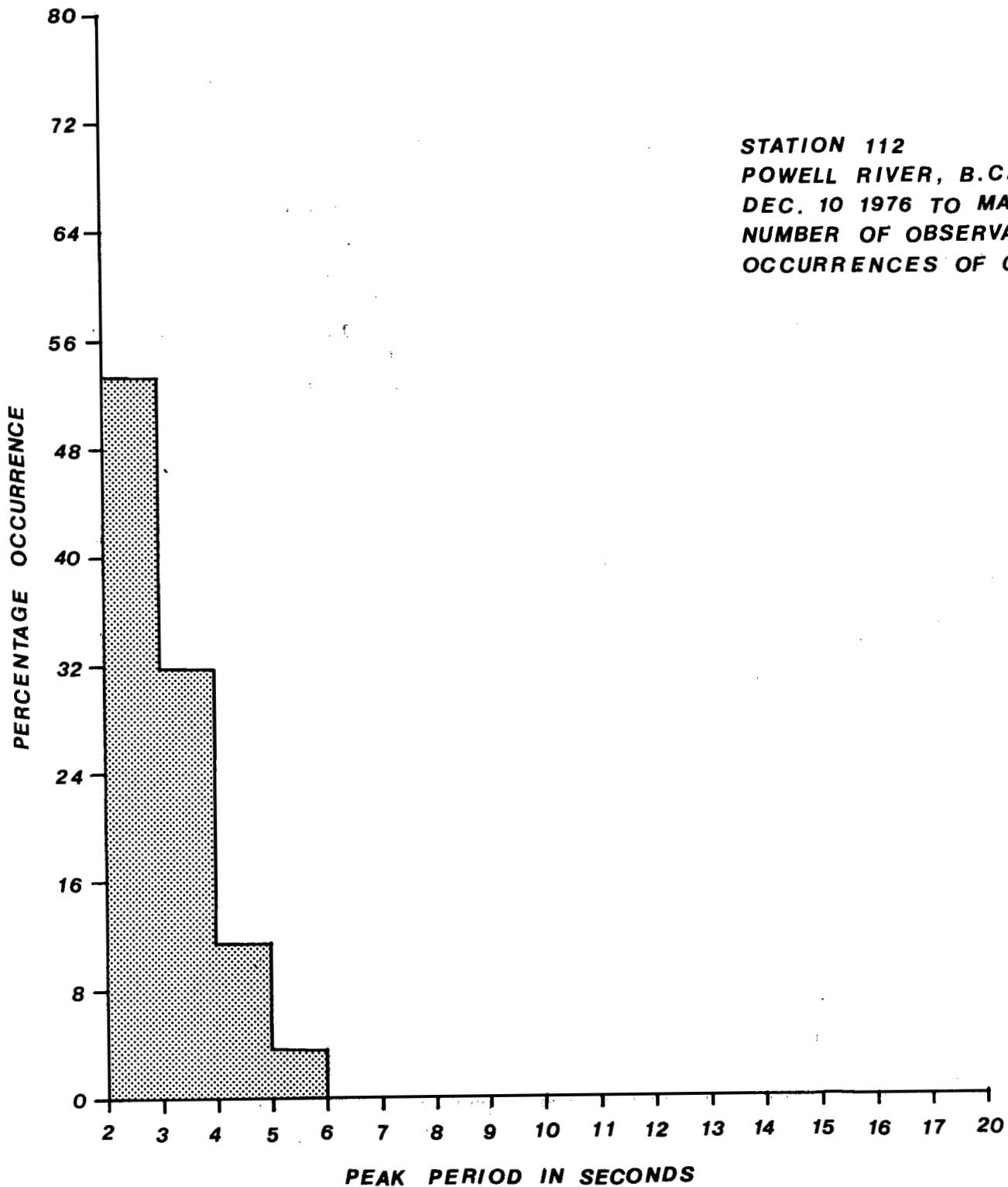
SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Station 108, Roberts Bank. Marine Environmental Data Service. (MEDS). Ottawa.

FIGURE 17 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, HALIBUT BANK



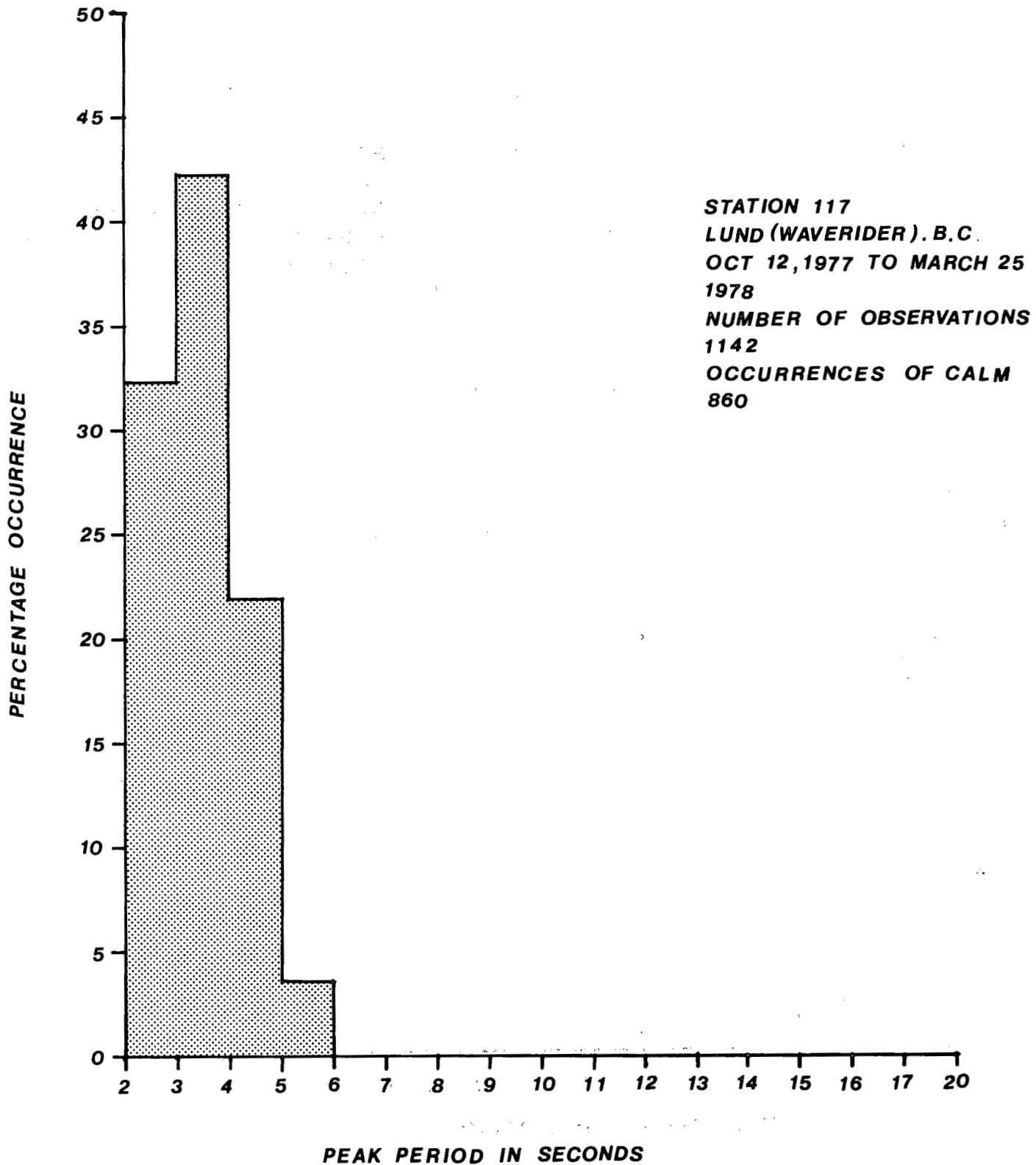
SOURCE: Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Station 97, Halibut Bank. MEDS. Ottawa.

FIGURE 18 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, POWELL RIVER



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Station 112, Powell River. MEDS. Ottawa.

FIGURE 19 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, LUND



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Station 117, Lund. MEDS. Ottawa.

FIGURE 20 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, GIBSONS LANDING

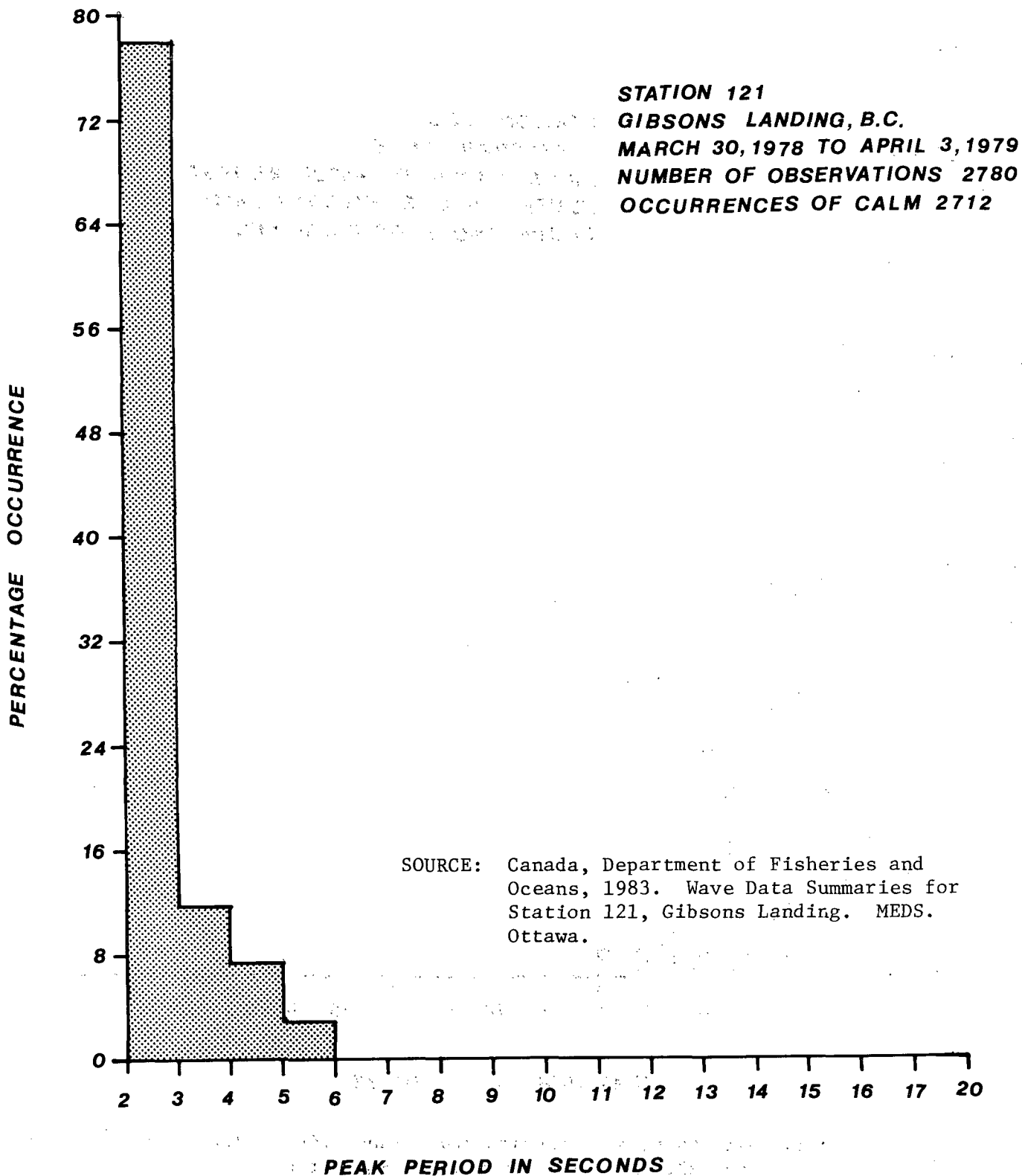
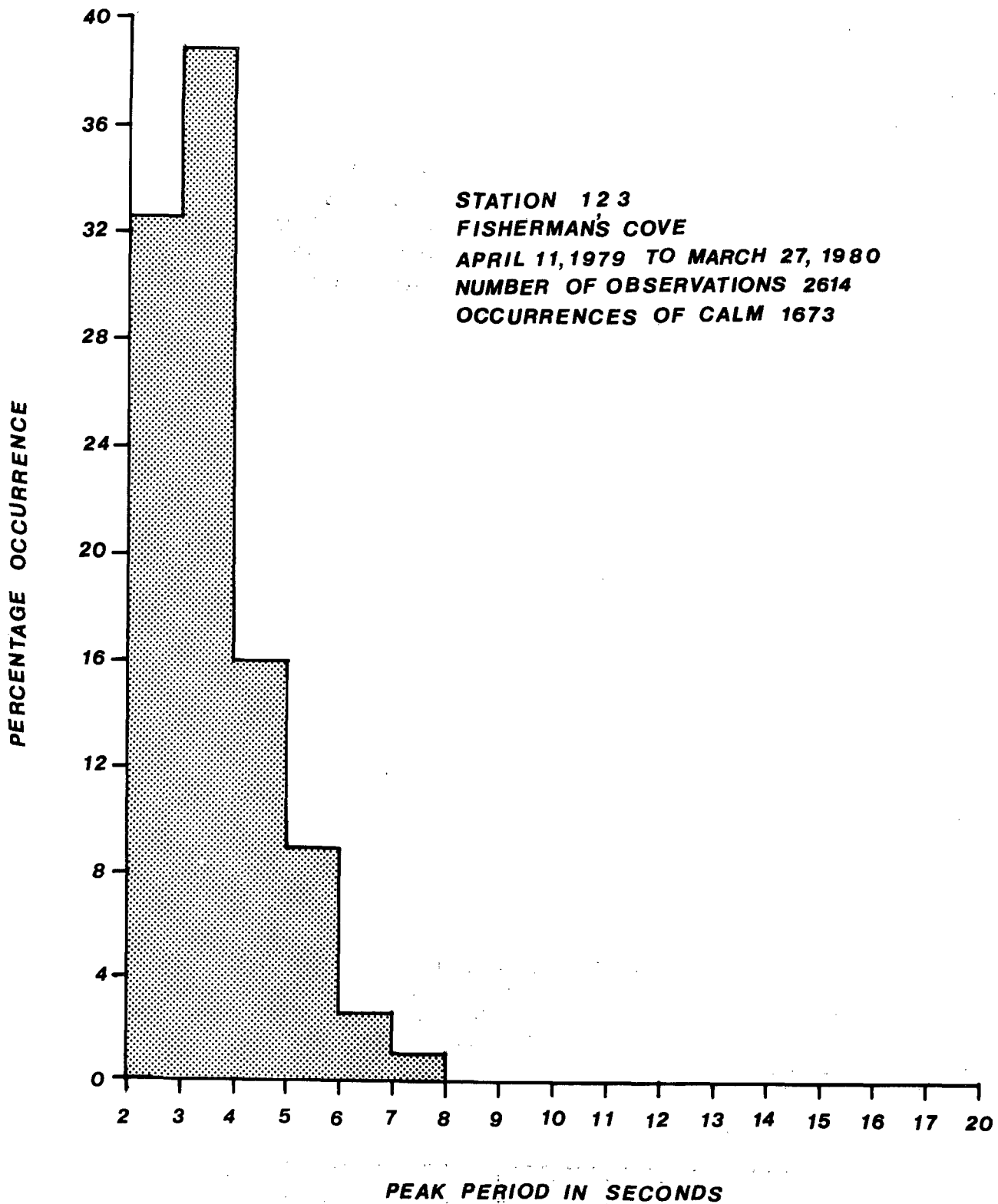


FIGURE 21 PERCENTAGE OCCURRENCE OF PEAK PERIODS, FISHERMAN'S COVE



SOURCE: Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Wave Data Summaries for Station 123, Fisherman's Cove. MEDS. Ottawa.

These long-term trends are important as to how waves affect the shoreline. For instance, a rise in sea level of only several centimetres could cause erosion of a formerly stable bluff, as waves now could reach to the cliff base; the reverse would also be possible.

Nearshore Slope

The amount of wave energy available and how it is dissipated in the shorezone is a function, in part, of the nearshore slope. Long, low slopes tend to dissipate energy gradually as the wave approaches the shore; steep slopes allow wave energy to dissipate directly on the shore. Headlands generally concentrate wave energy, while embayments diffuse it. The shore character of the study area is predominantly steep to moderately steep rock. Unconsolidated shores are also present and tend to have shallower nearshore slopes.

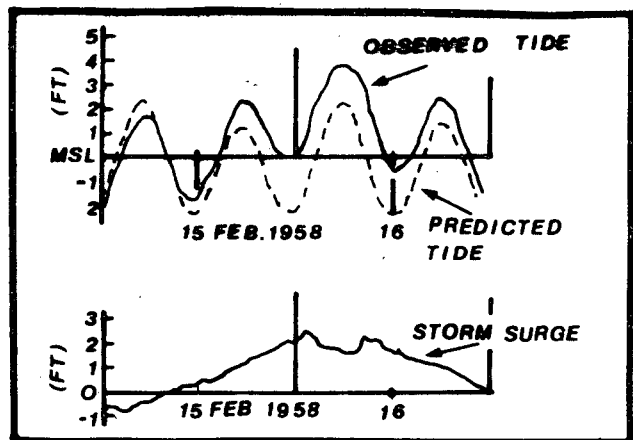
Synthesis

The study area is a moderate to low wave energy environment (Clague and Bornhold, 1980). Wave energy is also dependent on fetch and, as such, waves generated along the strait axis would likely have the highest energy. The study area, by virtue of this observation, would have the highest wave energies from the southeasterly quadrant. Clague and Bornhold (1980) confirm this, noting that the dominant waves in the strait are from the southeast. Thomson (1977c) states that short period waves produce stronger littoral currents than long period waves because they are less susceptible to refraction. This statement implies that there is more energy available to move sediments in these shorter waves. Clague and Bornhold (1980) rate the area as high in terms of littoral current energy.

Examples of the energy waves contain, and to what depth they affect the sediments, are offered by Krauel (pers. comm., 1983, and Harper, 1982). Both examples are outside the present study area, but do illustrate the ability of waves to move sediments in deep water. Krauel recorded large, anomalous wave heights during the storms of mid-December 1982. His wave height recorder was anchored on the bottom at -10 m below chart datum off-shore of Kye Bay on Vancouver Island. Wave heights of greater than 8 m were recorded during the storms. These readings, he deduced, were due to the bouncing of the recorder on the bottom from wave-induced currents. Remember this was during exceptionally high tides, so the water depth would be greater than 10 m at that time. This degree of recorder movement implies that the bottom currents would be strong enough to transport sediments.

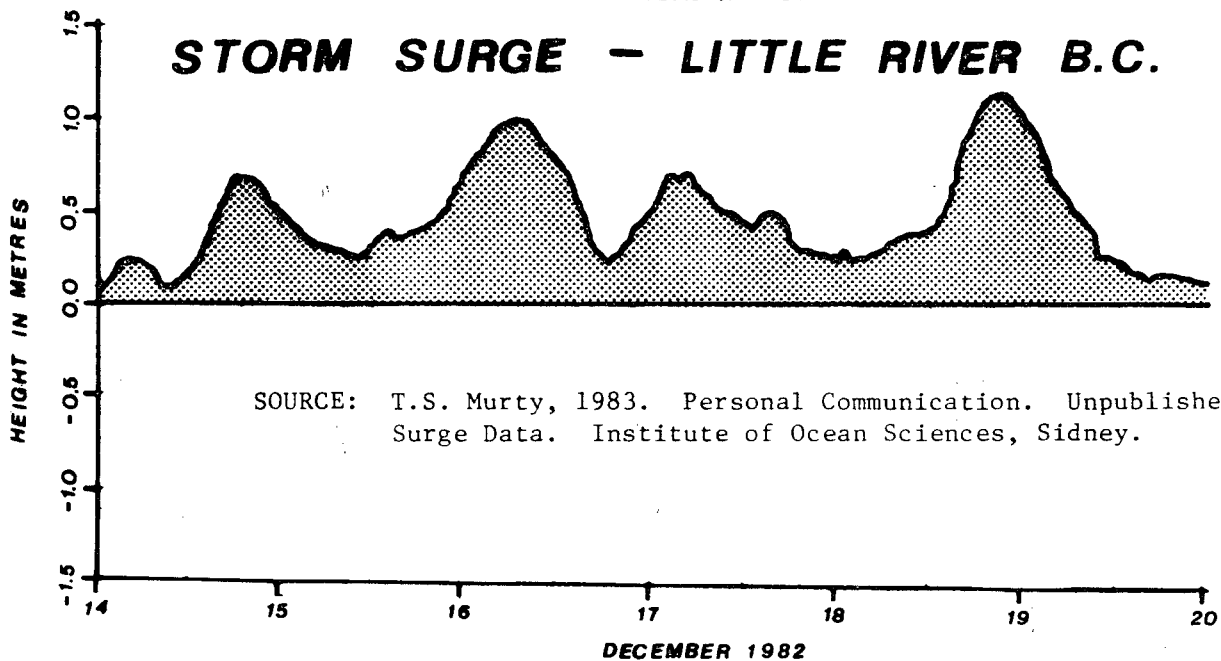
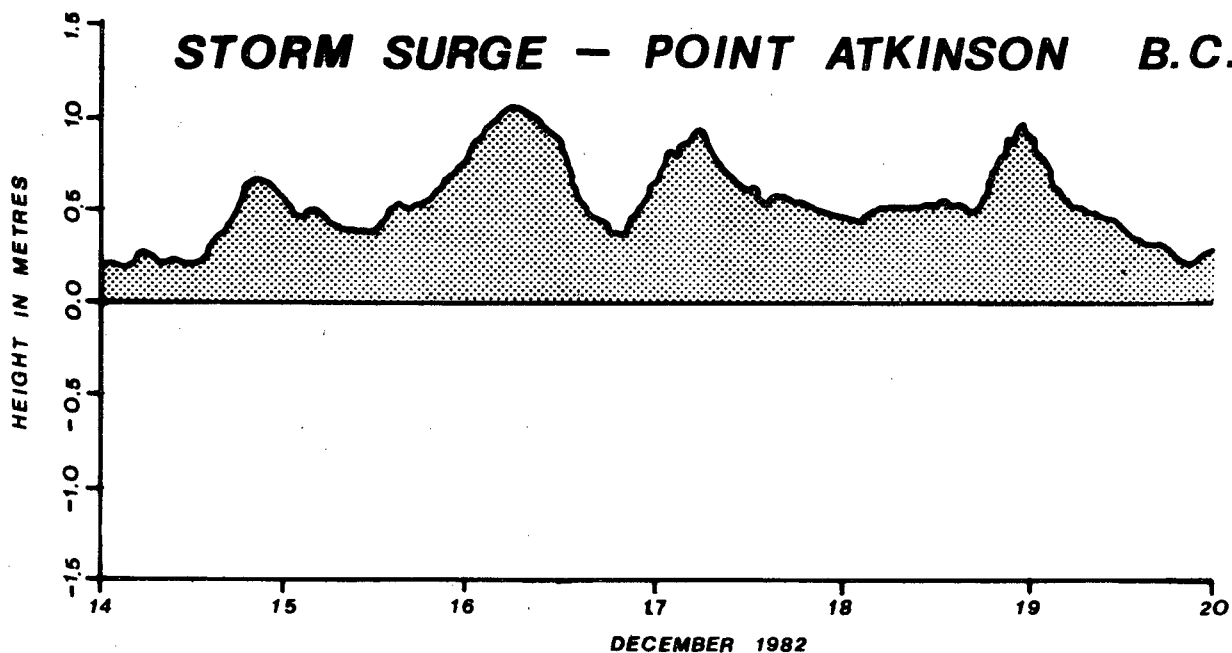
Harper (1982) estimated the maximum depth of bottom disturbance of sand-sized sediments due to wave-induced currents. Table 33 provides these estimates by station and Figure 23 identifies their location. In terms of frequency of disturbance, Harper (1982) cautions that the maximum values may be reached less than one percent of the time; a smaller value may be more frequent. He calculated the largest waves to be less than 2.5 m.

FIGURE 22



Example of how Storm Surge
Calculated for Atlantic City, N.J.

SOURCE: R.E. Thomson, 1981.
Oceanography of the British Columbia
Coast. Canadian Special Publication
of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Oceans, Ottawa.

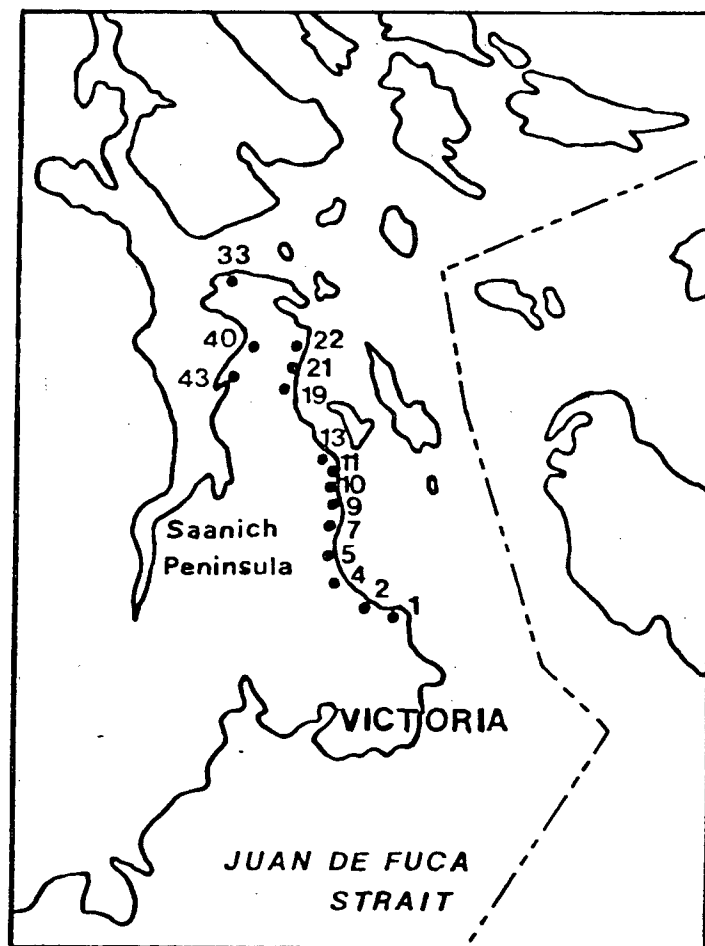


SOURCE: T.S. Murty, 1983. Personal Communication. Unpublished
Surge Data. Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney.

TABLE 33 MAXIMUM DEPTH OF SEDIMENT (SAND-SIZED) DISTURBANCE DUE TO WAVES

Station	SP01	SP02	SP04	SP05	SP07	SP09	SP10	SP11	SP13
Maximum Depth of Disturbance (m)	12.3	13.2	12.2	17.5	21.7	22.5	21.4	22.7	20.9
	SP19	SP21	SP22	SP33	SP40	SP43			
	7.6	7.8	8.6	8.1	8.1	7.6			

FIGURE 23 LOCATION OF SAMPLE STATIONS



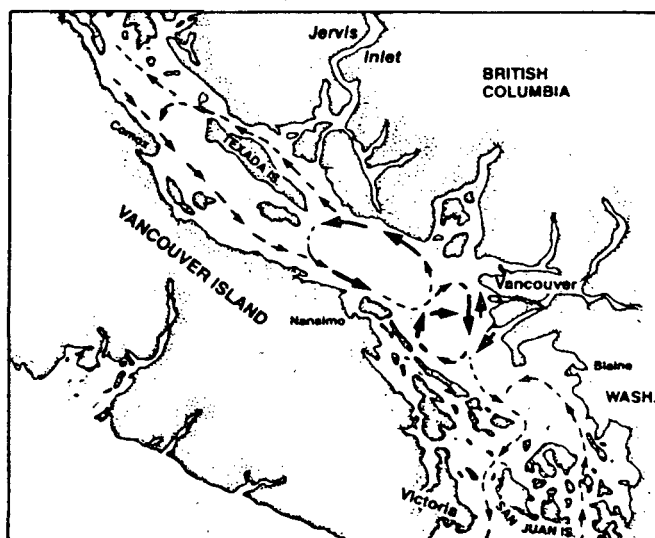
Source: J.R. Harper, 1982. Geologic Applications of a Wave Climate Model with Examples from the Saanich Peninsula. Paper presented at Western Region Workshop, Associate Committee for Research on Shoreline Erosion and Sedimentation, Simon Fraser University.

5.6.2 CIRCULATION

Overall Patterns

Tides, winds, river runoff, coriolis and centrifugal forces all influence circulation patterns. Few current surveys have been conducted in the northern Strait of Georgia compared to the more intensely studied central and southern regions; hence, only general patterns can be determined. The Canadian Hydrographic Services (CHS) Current Atlas (1983), based chiefly on computer models developed at the University of British Columbia, summarizes the Strait of Georgia tidal streams over the tidal cycle, but excludes the effects of winds and river runoff. Figure 24 below depicts the overall "average" surface circulation of the Strait of Georgia inferred by Thomson (1981) from a variety of sources.

FIGURE 24 AVERAGE SURFACE CIRCULATION IN SPRING AND SUMMER IN THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA



NOTE: Large arrows indicate currents measured by current meters and drift drogues. Small arrows indicate currents measured by drift bottles.

SOURCE: R.E. Thomson, 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Victoria. p.163.

The net circulation is essentially counterclockwise, with ebb and flood streams roughly paralleling the Strait's long axis. The CHS atlas, however, shows that currents in southern Malaspina Strait circulate clockwise during the flood. Along the east coast of Vancouver Island the ebb dominates. Tidal streams achieve maximum flood velocity three hours prior to high water and maximum ebb velocity three hours before low water. Within the broader portion of the Strait, the Coriolis force induces a small tilt towards the mainland, augmenting current speeds slightly on the eastern relative to the western Strait.

Northward and southward advancing tides meet near Lund (tidal exchange through the northern passages is roughly one-fifteenth that of the southern channels), producing weak, highly variable tidal patterns. Tidal currents decrease in strength from south to north, but may increase locally in channels. Velocities in Malaspina Strait and in Sabine Channel between Texada and Lasqueti islands may reach 50 cm per second.

The Fraser River discharge, especially during peak flows, affects much of the central strait, and may override tidal streams. Surface waters from the Fraser River have been found to flow north toward Wilson Creek on the Sechelt Peninsula and then westward towards Texada Island and Lasqueti Island (Thomson, 1981). Away from the influence of the Fraser, surface currents may depend more on local winds and tides.

Currents in the southern Strait are dominated by the tides, though where layering due to freshwater input occurs, the effects of wind may be significant. Velocities are highest in the narrow channels of the Gulf Islands.

Maximum ebb currents, in most cases, flow in the opposite direction to the flood currents. Within the top 100 m, ebb currents are significantly stronger and longer-lasting than flood currents. Conversely, below 100 m, currents are dominated by the flood. This phenomenon is evidently caused by the seaward flow of salt water entrained by surface freshwater coupled with the inward drift of sea water at depth to replace the water carried to the Pacific Ocean within the surface layer (Thomson, 1981).

Factors Influencing the Movement of Oil Spills

Knowledge of the oceanography of the coastal waters is of critical importance in the evaluation of marine resources at risk from oil spills. Oil Pollution is a threat because of existing and potential additional oil tanker traffic through Juan de Fuca Strait.

Surface water currents are the major determinant in the movement of a spill when winds are negligible. Tidal currents affect the range of impact, depending at what state of the tide the spill occurred.

Wind-generated surface currents as well as direct effects of wind friction can also be critical factors in the movement of a spill. However, waves created by wind can also contribute to a lessening of impacts of the spill by increasing the attrition of oil by weathering processes - evaporation, emulsification or sinking.

5.6.3 ATMOSPHERIC MIXING

The capacity of the atmosphere to disperse airborne pollutants is determined by such factors as horizontal transport and vertical mixing. Horizontal transport is a function of wind speed and direction; vertical mixing is a function of the stability of the lower atmosphere. Conditions which inhibit both are ground based inversions and light surface winds.

An estimate of the seasonal frequency of persistent light winds (speeds less than 12 km/h) is presented in Figure 25. These values are based on a national study by Shaw, Hirt and Tilley (1972).

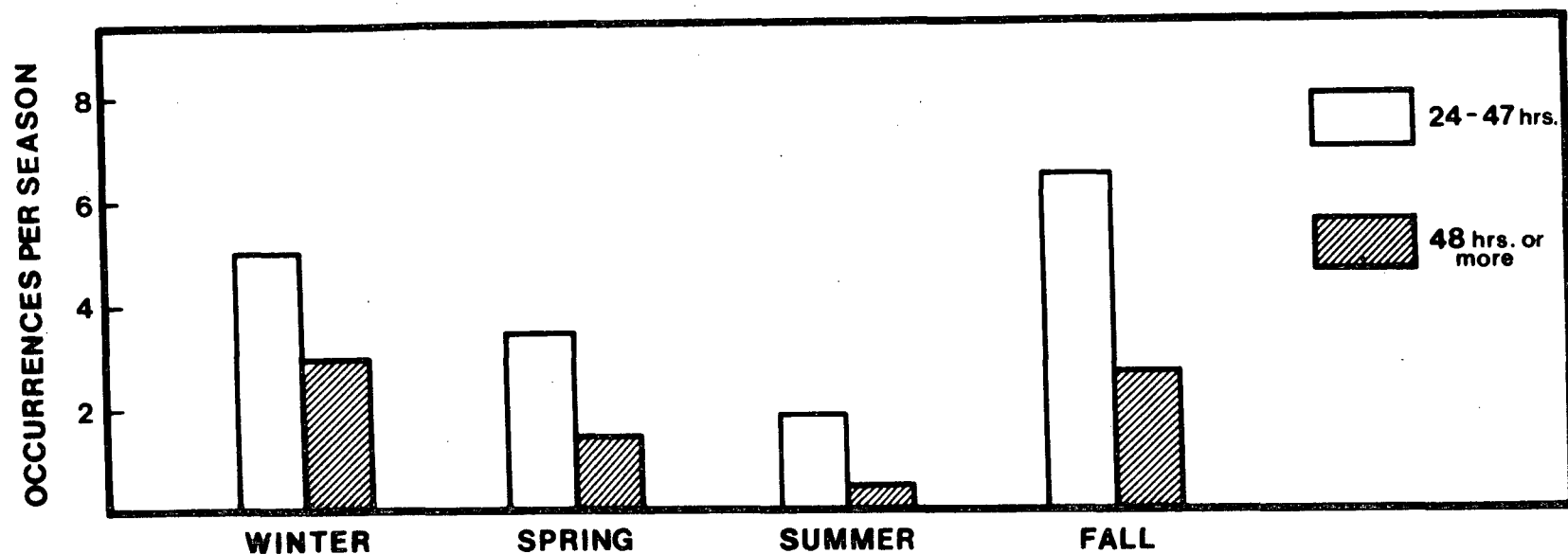
During fall and winter, stationary or slow moving high pressure centres are responsible for the light wind episodes, most commonly lasting less than two days. In the summer months, calms are most frequent in the hours around sunrise and sunset, during reversals of the land and sea breeze circulation pattern.

Inversions prevent convective mixing and limit the vertical dispersal of pollutants. Inversions are most commonly caused by nocturnal cooling of the earth's surface. In such cases, afternoon heating normally restores convective mixing. In the study area, however, several factors lead to more persistent inversions. These include: a) the overrunning of warm air from the southern Pacific Ocean, particularly in fall and winter; b) the cooling effects of the sea breeze in late spring and summer; c) the occasional presence of cold Arctic air in winter months.

Estimates of the diurnal and seasonal percentage frequencies of ground-based inversions for the study are provided in Figure 26. Considerable variation from the indicated values can be expected due to the local influence of water bodies and topography.

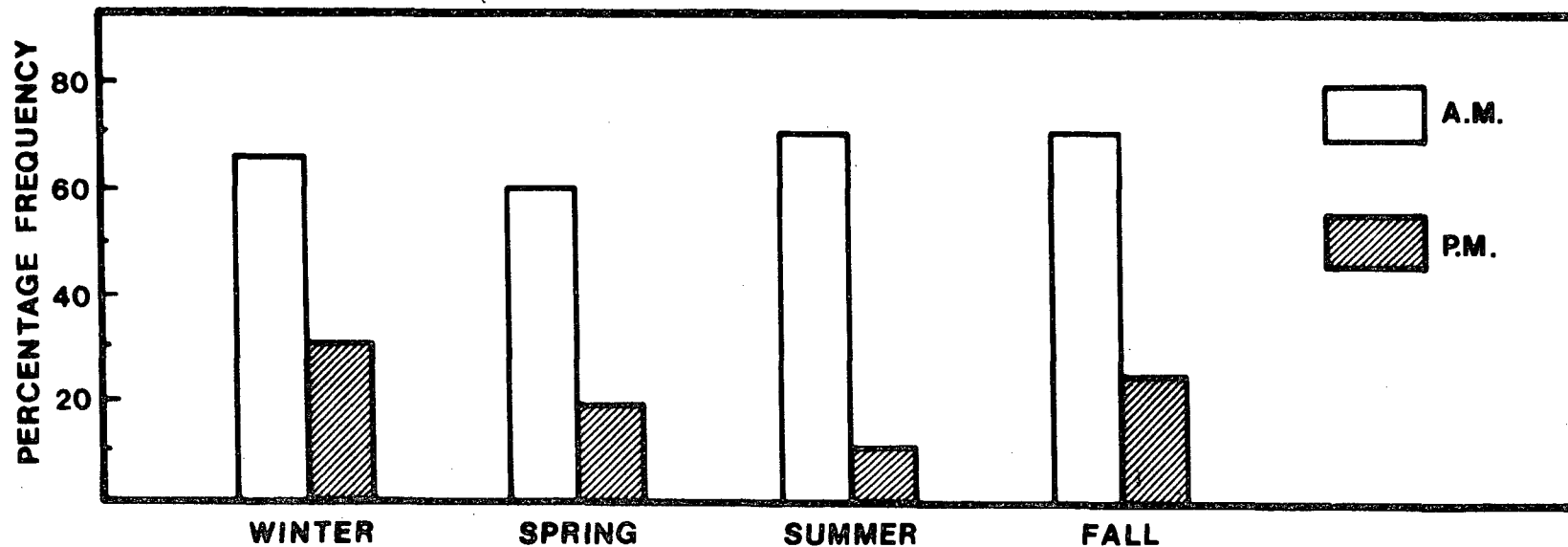
The dispersive capability of the lower atmosphere, the ventilation coefficient, can be calculated. It is the product of the height of the convectively mixed layer and the mean horizontal wind speed in that layer. Portelli's (1977) study of these factors indicate that, for the British Columbia coast, mean afternoon values of the ventilation coefficient peak sharply in spring (April), decline throughout the summer and persist at low levels during fall and winter. Pollutant buildup generally occurs during periods of calm or light winds which coincide with persistent ground-based inversions. Rain and snow partially remove pollutants from the lower atmosphere.

FIGURE 25 FREQUENCIES OF EPISODES OF PERSISTENT LIGHT SURFACE WINDS(SPEEDS LESS THAN 12KM/HOUR) BY SEASON



Source: R.W. Shaw, M.S. Hirt and M.A. Riley, 1972. Persistence of light surface winds in Canada. Atmosphere 10(2): 33-43.

FIGURE 26 PERCENTAGE FREQUENCIES OF GROUND-BASED INVERSIONS BY SEASON



Source: R.E. Munn, J. Tomlain, and R.L. Titus, 1970. A Preliminary Climatology of ground-based Inversions in Canada. Atmosphere 8(2): 52-56.
J.H. Emslie, 1979. Ground-based inversions frequencies determined from surface climatological data. Boundary Layer Meteorology 16(4): 409-419.

5.6.4 SEISMIC HAZARD

The B.C. coast has a 1 in 100 probability of an earthquake exceeding a horizontal acceleration of 6% of gravity. Horizontal acceleration is an accepted index of ground motion for engineering purposes. Witham and Milne (1972) note that earthquake damage is a function of earthquake magnitude, its depth of focus and mechanism, soil type, distance, and the quality of building construction.

Magnitude

A common measure of earthquake magnitude is the Richter system; earthquake intensities are described by the Modified Mercalli scale. Table 34 provides a comparison of the two methods of measurement. The threshold for significant damage during earthquakes is set at magnitude 5 on the Richter scale. Milne, Rogers, Riddihough, McMechan and Hyndman (1978) calculated a frequency of one in ten years for potentially damaging earthquakes. Figure 27 provides a comparison between the continental and offshore areas. Note that the offshore graph shows a relatively smooth slope with few large releases of strain. The continental area, however, shows large steps which are indicative of high strain release during large earthquakes. The straight lines represent an estimate of the strain accumulation rate (Milne et al, 1978). From this evidence, the authors postulate that if the historical seismicity pattern for the continental area continues, a major part of the present accumulated strain could be released in a significant earthquake within the next decade.

The largest magnitude earthquake to affect the study area was in June 1946; it registered 7.3. Its epicentre was calculated to be west of Comox in the Beaufort Range.

Depth of Focus and Mechanism

The maximum recorded depth of earthquakes in the region is about 70 km. By comparison, depths of up to 700 km are common in similar areas of the world (Milne et al, 1978). The Beaufort Range earthquake epicentre was about 30 km in depth.

The primary mechanisms of earthquakes in this region are strike-slip and normal faulting (Milne et al, 1978).

Soil Type

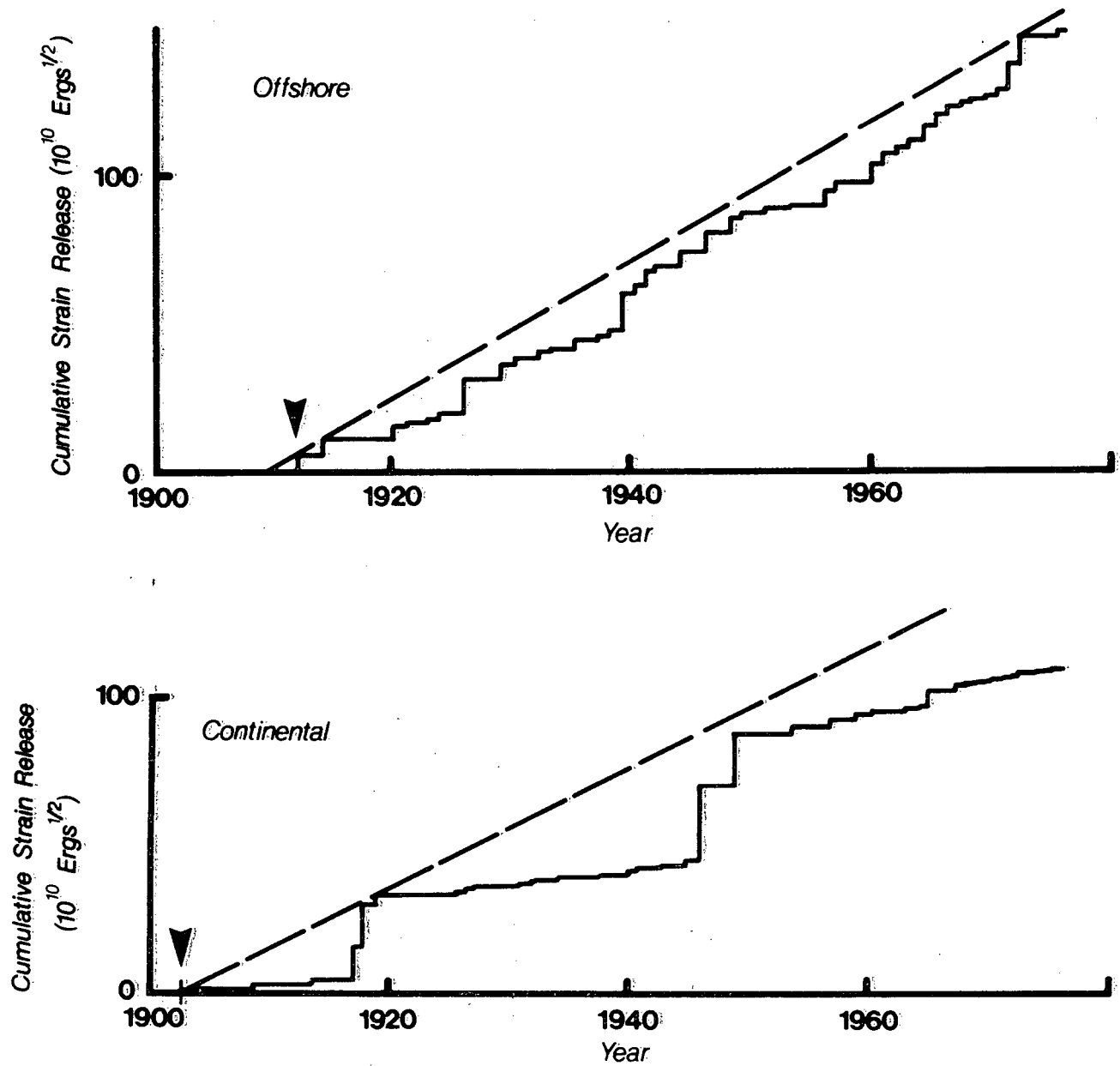
The type of material upon which structures are built directly influences the amplification of earthquakes. Table 35 provides amplification factors for various geological materials and represents the minimum design requirements recommended under the National Building Code. Hodgson (1946) reported that during the 1946 earthquake, Powell River and area suffered minor damage. He also observed that a section of houses built on rock within the damaged area had no perceivable damage.

TABLE 34 MODIFIED MERCALLI SCALE OF EARTHQUAKE INTENSITIES
WITH CORRESPONDING RICHTER MAGNITUDES

Intensity (Modified Mercalli Scale)	Description of Characteristic Effects	Magnitude Approximately Corresponding to Highest Intensity Reached
I	Instrumental: detected only by seismography	
II	Feeble: noticed only by sensitive people	3.5
III	Slight: like the vibrations due to a passing heavy truck; felt by people at rest, especially on upper floors	to 4.2
IV	Moderate: felt by people while walking; rocking of loose objects, including standing vehicles	4.3 to
V	Rather Strong: felt generally; most sleepers are woken and bells ring	4.8
VI	Strong: trees sway and all suspended objects swing; damage by overturning and falling of loose objects	4.9 to 5.4
VII	Very Strong: general alarm, walls crack and plaster falls	5.5 to 6.1
VIII	Destructive: car drivers seriously disturbed; masonry fissured; chimneys fall; poorly constructed buildings damaged	6.2 to 6.9
IX	Ruinous: some houses collapse where ground begins to crack; pipes break open.	
X	Disastrous: ground cracks badly; many buildings destroyed and railway lines bent; land- slides on steep slopes	7.0 to 7.3
XI	Very Disastrous: few buildings remain standing bridges destroyed; all services (railway, pipes, cables) out of action; great land- slides and floods.	7.4 to 8.1
XII	Catastrophic: total destruction; objects thrown into air; ground rises and falls in waves	8.1+

Source: D. Maynard, 1979. Terrain Capability for Residential Settlements: Summary Report, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria. 61 p.

FIGURE 27 STRAIN RELEASE AS A FUNCTION OF TIME



Source: W.G. Milne, G.C. Rogers, R.P. Riddihough, G.A. McMechan, and R.D. Hyndman, 1978. "Seismicity of Western Canada". Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences.

TABLE 35 SEISMIC AMPLIFICATION FACTORS FOR DIFFERENT GEOLOGICAL MATERIALS

TYPE AND DEPTH OF MATERIAL	AMPLIFICATION FACTOR
1. Rock, dense and very dense coarse-grained sediments, very stiff and hard fine-grained sediments, compact coarse-grained sediments and firm and stiff fine-grained sediments from 0 to 15 m deep	1.0
2. Compact coarse-grained sediments, firm and stiff fine-grained sediments with a depth of greater than 15 m; very loose coarse-grained sediments and very soft and soft fine-grained sediments from 0 to 15 m deep	1.3
3. Very loose and loose coarse-grained sediments and very soft and soft fine-grained sediments with depths greater than 15 m	1.5

Note: Prepared by the Associate Committee of the National Building Code 1977

Source: D. Maynard, 1979. Terrain Capability for Residential Settlements: Summary Report, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria. 61 p.

Distance

Earthquake damage diminishes with distance from the epicentre (Whitman and Smith, 1970). Active faults in recent geological time are the San Juan and Leech River faults. Milne *et al* (1978) report that the more active earthquake areas correspond to the boundaries of major tectonic plates on the coast. The Strait of Georgia and Puget Sound are specifically influenced by the contact of the Juan de Fuca and America plates. Figure 28, the distribution of strain release, shows a concentration around the Gulf Islands - Puget Sound area south of 49°. This led Milne *et al* (1970) to postulate that this could be evidence of a tectonic feature. Known fault lines can be found on the Generalized Terrain Limitations Map Series of this folio.

In terms of the 1946 earthquake, centred west of Comox, Hodgson (1946) concluded that Powell River was outside the immediate earthquake zone, but still suffered noticeable damage. Two outstanding incidences were reported:

- a) The telegraph cable between Texada Island and Powell River was severed at the time of the earthquake.
- b) The bluff south of Westview slumped, while "at high-water mark on the beach, a great welt was formed, presumably accompanied by an up-thrown sheet of water. The welt is 180 feet long, about 3 feet wide and was originally 5 feet high. The clay which came out of it is cracked deeply along the centre of the welt, and is of the consistency of rather poorly-made cement". Hodgson (1946).

He further observed that this is the only case where the ground, surface or submarine, was raised by the earthquake. Read Island, in the northwest part of the study area, apparently suffered some of the most spectacular damage during the earthquake. Hodgson (1946) quotes reports of about 4.86 ha of orchard down-dropping 6 to 9 m with crevasses 3 to 6 m wide, extending 275 m into the surrounding woods. This happened at a farm located on Burwood Bay. He attributed this sinking to the drop of foundation rocks beneath the valley which runs east-west across Read Island.

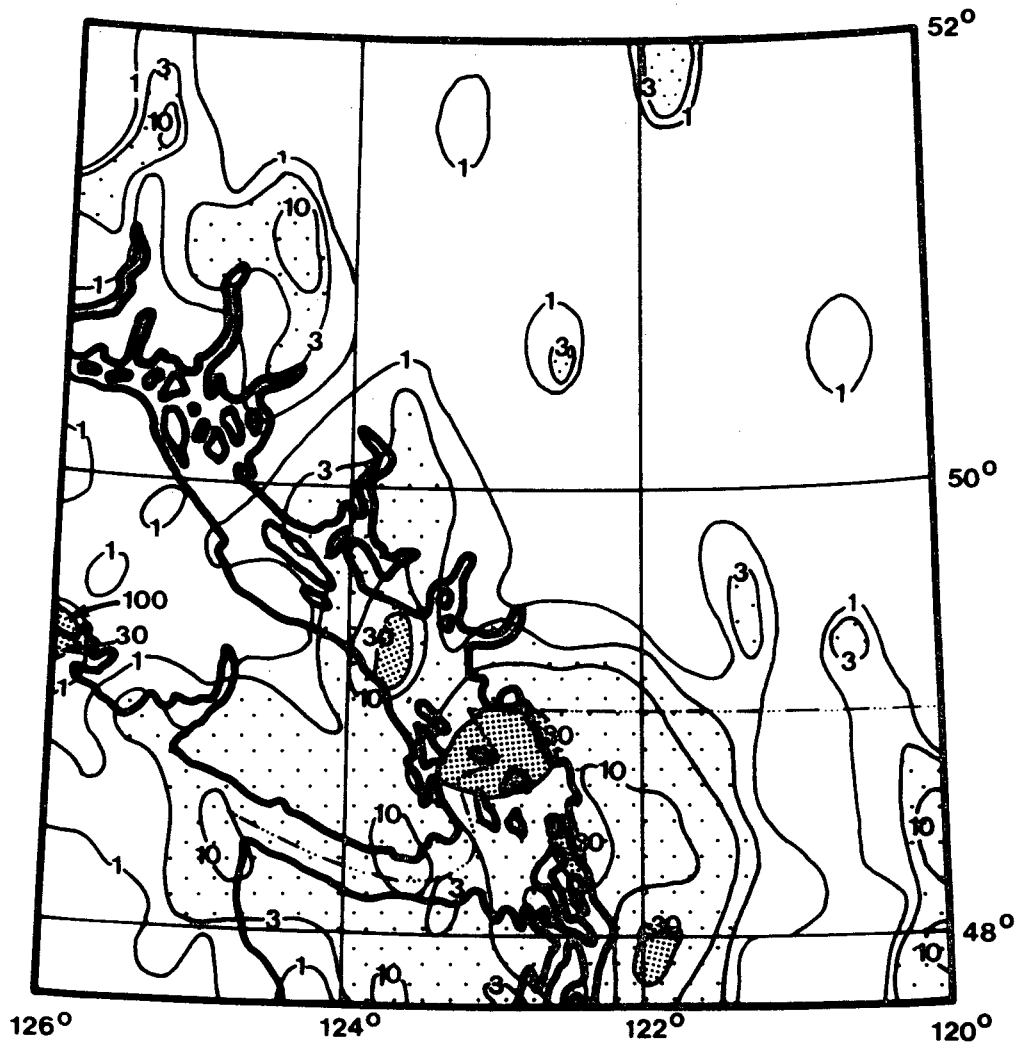
Quality of Building Construction

Foster and Carey (1976) and Wuorinen (1976), studying the Victoria area, give accounts of the types of structures susceptible to earthquake damage. They also note that the severity of damage can be lessened or magnified by the type of foundation condition. Structures identified as most susceptible.

- a) unreinforced masonry and concrete structures;
- b) wood frame structures under four storeys with poor lateral force bracing at foundation level;
- c) most structures on poor foundation materials such as clays.

Hodgson (1946) observed that the damaged chimneys of the study area were those in poor repair.

FIGURE 28 'CONTINENTAL' AREA REGIONAL DISTRIBUTION OF STRAIN RELEASE
SINCE 1951



NOTE: Contours are equivalent number of magnitude 5 earthquakes per 100 years/100 km².

SOURCE: Ibid. Figure 27.

Secondary Effects

The secondary effects of a strong earthquake are potentially more damaging than the initial shock. Two prominent effects are tsunamis and landslides.

The probability of a damaging tsunami generated in the Strait of Georgia is less than the probability of a damaging earthquake. Sea waves were generated by the 1946 earthquake. Again, Hodgson's (1946) thorough report details the incident. The Sisters Island lightkeeper's report reads:

"One tidal wave came at 10:22 a.m., seven minutes after the earthquake. The wave was seven to eight feet high. A second wave 100 feet from the first was four to five feet high. The speed was ten knots".

Ships to the northeast and southwest of Texada Island both report experiencing shocks as if they had run aground; neither reported waves, however. (Hodgson, 1946).

The probability of landslides from seismic activity in the region is highest in areas of unconsolidated deposits and jointed bedrock. No major landslides were observed or reported for the study area during the 1946 earthquake, although steep coastal bluffs and incised river valleys would be vulnerable to failure.

5.7 FACTORS OF BIOLOGICAL PRODUCTIVITY

THE AREA

The Sechelt-Cortes coast offers a mosaic of landscapes, shore processes, and habitats. Geological processes and wave energy have modified the coastline to create a range of geomorphic forms, from low backshore with gently sloping sand beaches to vertical rock cliffs dropping deeply into the sea. Because of the size and configuration of the Strait of Georgia, a range of energy environments exists.

A classification system that describes this environment and that may be considered complementary to that of Ricketts and Calvin (1968) would include (a) estuaries, (b) protected shorelines, (c) channels and protected inner coasts, and (d) unprotected inner coasts. Within these environments differences in substrate, wave energy, and the physical/chemical environment are revealed in the variety of resident biota.

5.7.1 THE PHYSICAL/CHEMICAL ENVIRONMENT

Water temperature, salinity, light penetration, nutrients, and dissolved oxygen are major factors influencing primary production in the sea. Many of the physiological functions (i.e. reproduction, cell growth, respiration) of marine organisms are temperature regulated, occurring only within a narrow temperature range. Similarly, organisms that are unable to regulate their internal environment in response to changes in their external medium, must remain within a relatively narrow range of salinities for survival. Light penetration is necessary for photosynthesis by plants, and for visual predators. Nutrients are required by all marine life forms; and dissolved oxygen is, of course, necessary for respiration to occur.

Water temperatures within a column of seawater are relatively homogeneous during the winter, autumn, and spring. In the summer months, however, the upper layer of water - to perhaps 30 metres - becomes warmer as solar radiation increases. This temperature gradient inhibits mixing with the deeper water by causing a density gradient. Mixing continues, however, within this upper layer as surface winds circulate the water, thus maintaining relatively constant temperatures.

The salinity of seawater varies with the quantity and rate of precipitation, evaporation, and river discharge. Precipitation and river discharge dilute marine surface waters, while evaporation increases the salinity. As fresh water is less dense than salt water, the salinity of the water column increases with depth. Also, the salinity of surface waters increases with increasing distance from river inflows.

The penetration of light into the water column is a function of turbidity. Turbidity results from suspended particulate matter and dissolved organic substances that scatter and diffuse incident light. Coastal waters typically receive no light below 30 metres; the depth to which 1% light transmission occurs (which demarcates the lower limit of plant growth) is characteristically 10 metres (Sumich, 1976).

The distribution of dissolved oxygen within surface waters is usually homogeneous because of frequent wave action and surface mixing. Minor variations may be evident between regions because of atmospheric or surface phenomena. Dissolved oxygen concentrations in areas of good tidal exchange are normally adequate for all organisms.

The availability of nutrients within surface waters declines during the growing season as plant production increases. Regions of upwelling result in a replenishment of nutrients from the lower strata. River discharges and nutrient regeneration from shallow muds also contribute to the nutrient pool. Tidal and wind currents further redistribute nutrient-rich water within the coastal zone.

The interested reader will refer to the Coastal Resources Map Series section - "physical oceanography - Station Distribution and Accompanying Table" for Strait of Georgia data on these topics. The "Sources" section should also be consulted for studies relating to the physical and chemical environment.

5.7.2 PRIMARY PRODUCTION - PHYTOPLANKTON

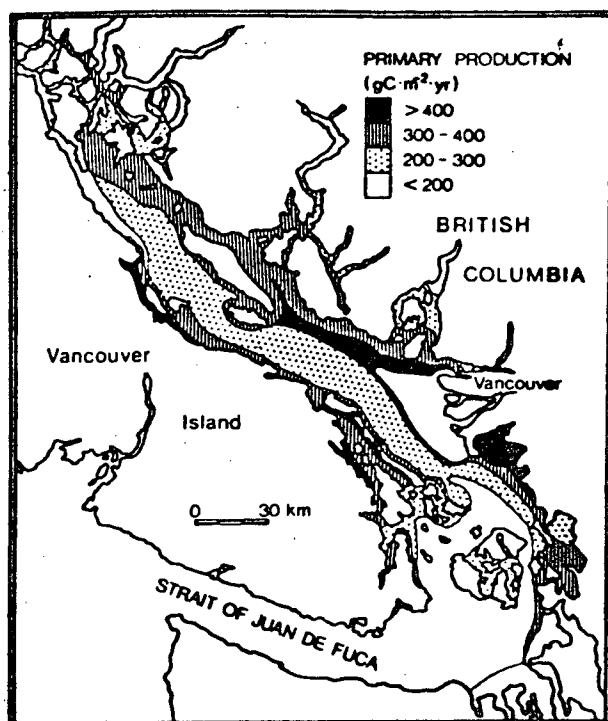
Primary production is the creation of organic material from carbon dioxide, water, and nutrients at the expense of solar energy. Gross primary production refers to the total amount of organic material produced by photosynthesis; net primary production refers to the amount of organic material available to other levels of the food chain after losses to respiration, reproduction, and mortality are considered. Primary production is usually reported in grams of carbon fixed by photosynthesis within a square metre per unit of time ($\text{gC}/\text{m}^2/\text{year}$).

Data for the study area (Figure 29) reveal high rates of primary productivity along the coastline from Gower Point to Cortes Island with lower rates north of Malaspina Peninsula.

With the exception of estuaries, the areas of highest productivity occur where temperature stratification is well developed, salinity is consistently high, and other factors of the physical/chemical environment, described earlier, are in abundant supply. Where this occurs, primary production is limited mostly by the grazing activities of organisms higher on the food web. When the supply of one or more factors exceeds the tolerance limits of phytoplankton species, however, growth of the individual and the population is curtailed. Primary productivity is also limited by the factor in least supply. Figure 30 illustrates the importance of each of the factors of growth in maintaining high productivity. The figure shows, for example, that a reduction in the "quantity" of one factor (i.e. nutrients) results in diminished primary productivity which sequentially limits the energy transmitted to, and populations sustained at, higher levels of the food web. Simply stated, a low phytoplankton crop supports a low zooplankton crop which in turn supports fewer juvenile salmon.

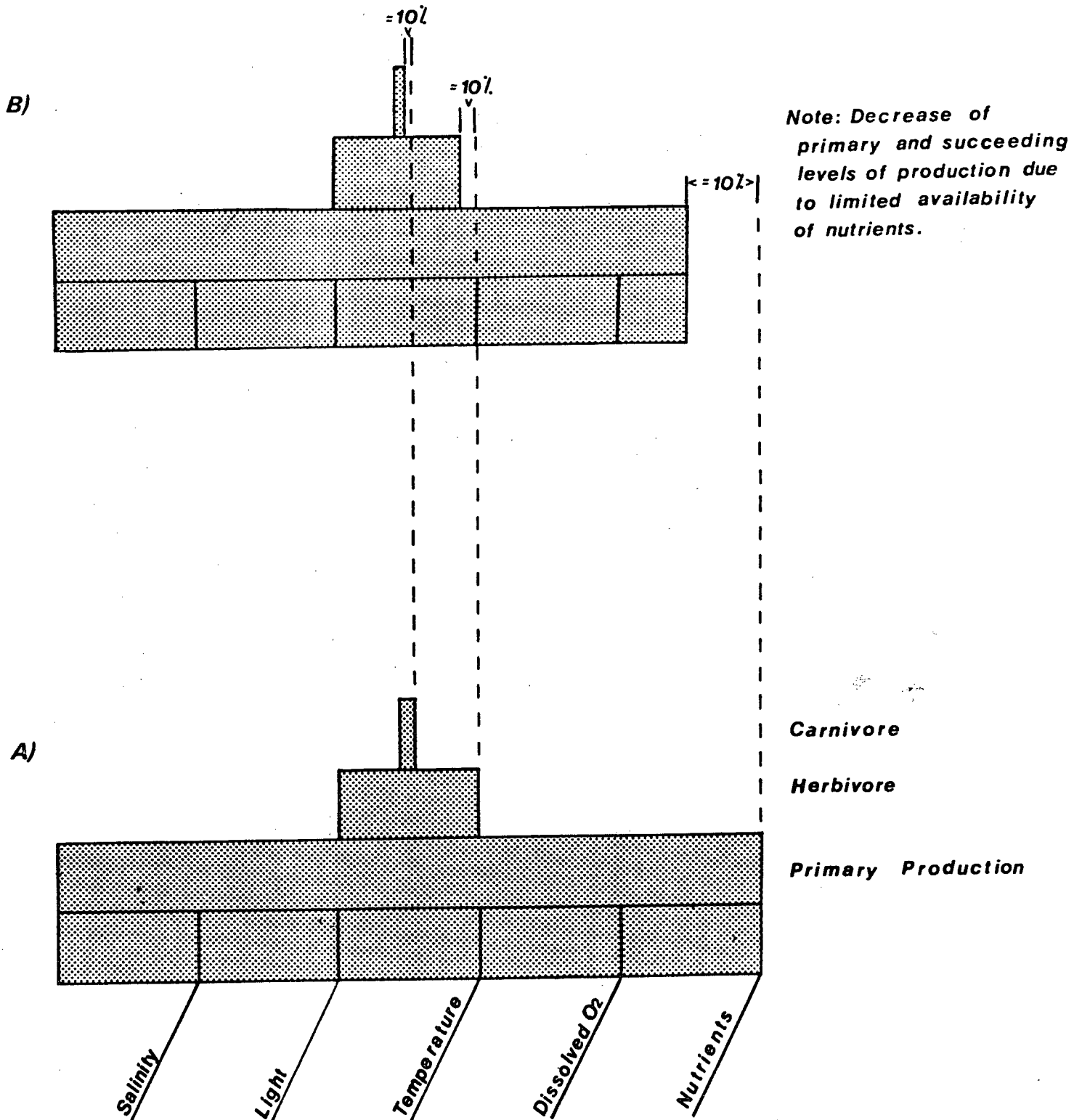
Important fisheries resources in the study area (see Coastal Resources Map Series (1:50,000) section - Fish and Shellfish Resources) are found primarily in the regions of moderate to high primary productivity.

FIGURE 29 GENERALIZED PATTERN OF PRIMARY PRODUCTION (PHYTOPLANKTON) IN THE STRAIT OF GEORGIA-JUAN DE FUCA SYSTEM



SOURCE: J.G. Stockner, D.D. Cliff and K.R.S. Shortread. 1979. Phytoplankton Ecology of the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada. 36. Ottawa.

Figure 30 - SCHEMATIC OF ENERGY TRANSFER BETWEEN TROPHIC LEVELS IN UNLIMITED (A) AND LIMITED (B) ECOSYSTEMS

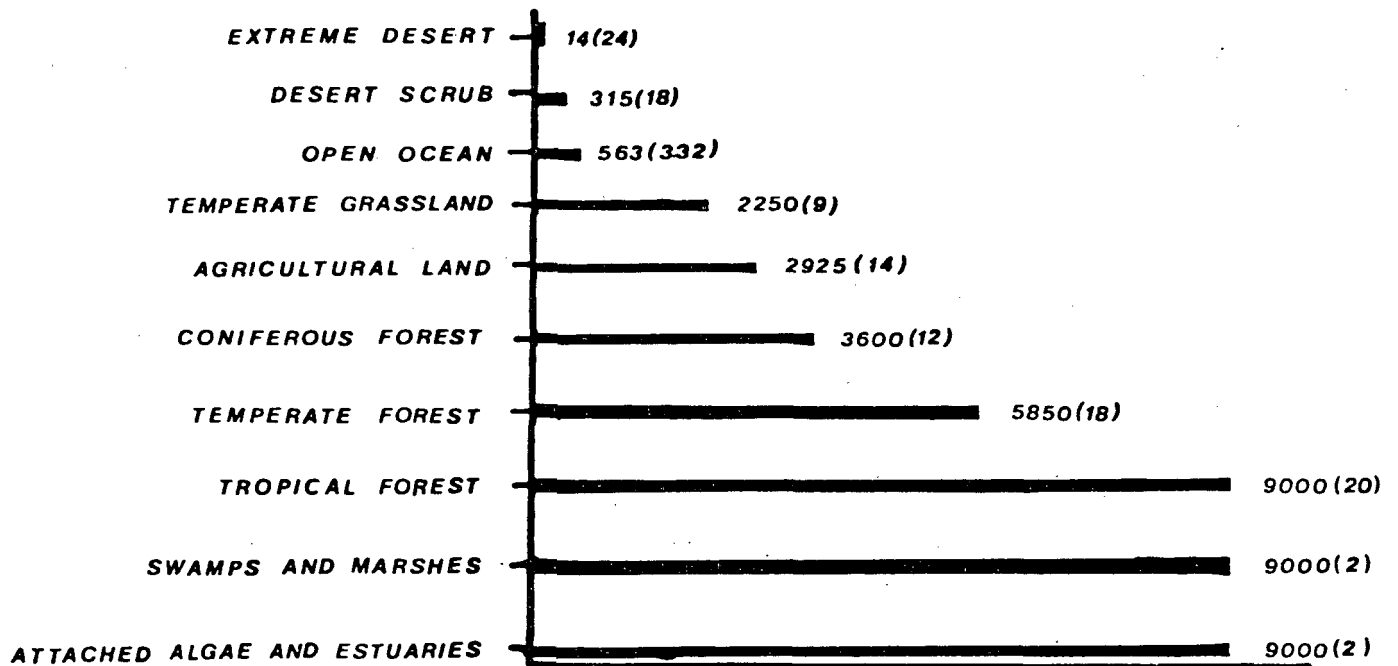


5.7.3 PRIMARY PRODUCTION - SEaweEDS AND SALTMARSHES

The productivity of seaweed and saltmarsh communities is impressive (Figure 31). Seaweed studies from Nova Scotia indicate that Laminaria longieauris on a rock substrate will produce up to 20 times the initial weight of the blade over a two-year period even though 35 to 40% of the gross production is liberated as dissolved organic matter during the same period (Carefoot, 1977). Such high rates of production result from the constant provision of nutrients to the leaves by currents, adequate temperature and light. In estuaries, detrital based eelgrass ecosystems are also highly productive. Their productivity comes from the interaction of numerous species that have evolved complex symbiotic relationships within these communities.

Estuaries are transitional areas, and as such, contain a significantly high proportion of brackish water - water of intermediate salinity. Numerous classifications of brackish water exist, although a common standard is 0.2‰ to 30.0‰ (Remane and Schlieper, 1971). Brackish water originates when salt water is mixed with fresh water. Because of differential inputs of heat and salt water, stratification in estuaries is not common. Under the right wind or wave conditions, particulate matter such as plankton, detritus, or sediment uplifted from the substrate or discharged by rivers, may diminish light penetration and reduce plant growth. Normally, brackish water is poor in species diversity relative to fresh and salt waters; however the populations of species present are usually larger (Remane and Schlieper, 1971). For instance, the lowest number of species occurs at the 5-7‰ salinity level (Figure 32). In addition, a smaller size is attained by organisms living in brackish conditions, although species that migrate to sea water (i.e. salmonids) generally attain rapid growth thereafter. An important seagrass in the ecology of estuaries is Zostera marina. It is acclimated to brackish water conditions and survives salinities to 30‰. The estuarine phase is an extremely important part of the life cycle for many organisms (i.e. salmonids, shrimp) as it prepares them for survival in the sea.

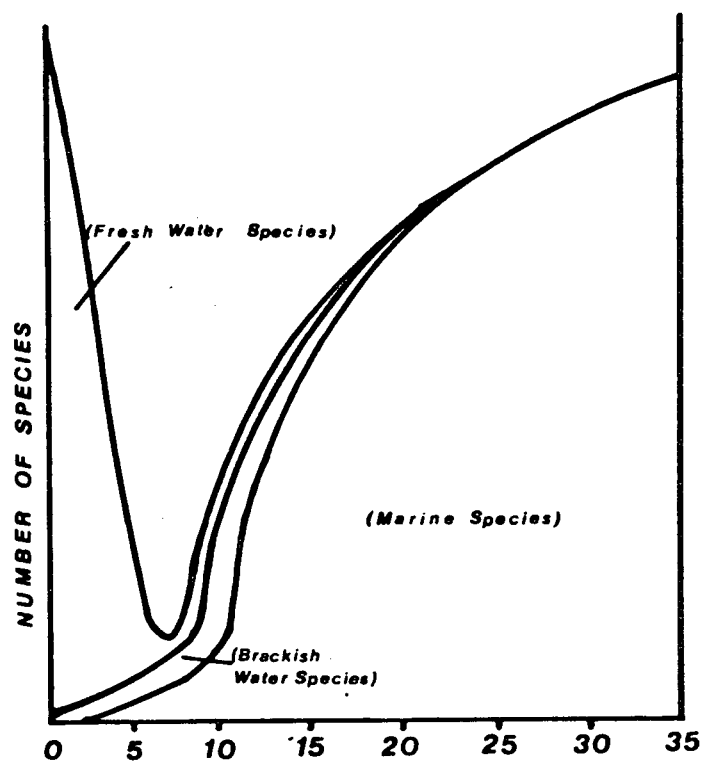
FIGURE 31: AVERAGE ANNUAL RATE OF NET PLANT PRODUCTION FOR SELECTED ECOSYSTEMS



NOTE: The number after the bar is Kcal/m²/yr; the number within parentheses is area in 10⁶ km².

SOURCE: Adopted from E.G. Kormondy 1976, Concepts of Ecology, Prentice Hall Inc. New Jersey.

FIGURE 32: NUMBER OF SPECIES IN RELATION TO SALINITY LEVEL (‰)



SOURCE: A. Remale and C. Schlieper, 1971. Biology of Brackish Water. John Wiley and Sons, Inc.

5.8 THE ADMINISTRATION AND MANAGEMENT OF COASTAL RESOURCES

5.8.1 INTRODUCTION

Numerous agencies administer and manage coastal resources. The Coastal Zone Resources Subcommittee publication (1978) identifies agency roles and responsibilities. In 1980 the Land Use Planning section of the Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing prepared a discussion paper entitled "The Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing's Role in Foreshore Administration". This document identifies agency mandates, planning programs and responsibilities for foreshore administration. The publication "Land Use Law" by Ince (1977) provides an overview of the legislation governing land use in British Columbia.

5.8.2 THE ADMINISTRATION OF COASTAL LAND

Crown Land - Provincial

The Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing is a key management and administrative agency in the coastal zone. The Ministry may transfer its management responsibility to other provincial agencies (i.e. Marine Resources Branch) that indicate their particular interest in an area or a resource (i.e. oyster growing areas). The Ministry remains, however, the authority for the issuance of foreshore leases.

The application process for foreshore leases varies according to the type of lease, and the area in which it is located. Log storage lease applications undergo a complex review process through various levels of government (Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1980). On the other hand, a commercial foreshore lease application may obtain approval at a regional office the same day it is submitted. In areas where management committees and a management plan exist, individual lease applications are reviewed for conformity.

In terms of foreshore regulation, the Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing uses terms and conditions of foreshore leases to monitor and enforce its own policies. The Ministry is also responsible for area management plans; an example of such a plan is the Pender Harbour Crown Foreshore Plan (Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1983).

While the Ministry of Lands, Parks, and Housing is the primary agency with responsibilities in the coastal zone, direct responsibilities are also held by the Ministries of Environment, Forests, Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources, and Transportation and Highways.

Crown Lands - Federal

The Small Craft Harbours Branch of the Department of Fisheries and Oceans controls and administers wharves and piers constructed on federal property or with federal funds. The Canadian Wildlife Service may establish reserves for migratory birds. Transport Canada administers public harbours and navigation facilities. The Department of National Defence administers military reserves.

Under the Indian Act, the band Council, the Cabinet and the federal government (Department of Indian and Northern Affairs) are responsible for land use on Indian Reserves. While the Council may divide the reserve into zones of permitted use, the federal cabinet exercises ultimate control in major land use decisions.

Other Public Lands

The Regional Parks Act of 1965 allows the regional districts to acquire, develop, and manage regional parks. The Powell River Regional District has three regional parks encompassing a total area of approximately 44 hectares. The regional district plans to acquire an additional 167 hectares of parkland by the year 1992 (Powell River Regional District).

The Sunshine Coast Regional District owns two regional parks which encompass a total area of 66 hectares. The regional district has an official regional park plan which identifies parkland for future acquisition. Two phases are considered in the plan (Phase I 1983-1987 and Phase II 1988-1992), each of which identifies future areas and property for acquisition (Lefeaux, 1982).

Private Lands

Private lands are recorded on the B.C. Assessment Authority's taxation assessment rolls. The lots, their area and boundaries, are recorded on cadastral maps.

Tree farms are privately owned land. The owner agrees to follow good forest management practices, in return for which the land is valued by the B.C. Assessment Authority on the basis of the harvest yields predicted from an approved plan of forest management.

Timberland refers to those forest lands where fee-simple ownership is held by forest companies. There are no cut stipulations. Such lands were obtained through Crown grants made early in the history of the province. Ownership of this type of forest land provides greater freedom to the owner to use and develop the land and forest resources than is the case with Crown forest tenure.

5.8.3 WATER MANAGEMENT

Water Supply and Licensing

Federal - Major federal legislation dealing with water supply includes the Canada Water Act and the Fisheries Act. The Canada Water Act permits the federal government to operate a network of streamflow, water level, and sediment stations, to develop flood damage reduction programs, to undertake flood control measures, to undertake shoreline and water resource management programs, and to conduct research on surface and groundwater hydrology. The Fisheries Act allows the Department of Fisheries and Oceans to influence flow regimes of regulated rivers in order to protect the migration and spawning habitat of salmon stocks.

Provincial - The Ministry of Environment, by virtue of the Water Act, manages freshwater supplies by controlling the issuance of water licences, conducts ground and surface water research, and engages in river and flood control programs. Under the Municipal Act, local and regional administrations are responsible for water supply and distribution.

The right to withdraw and use surface water in the province is granted by water licence. Water licences are issued by the Ministry of Environment, Water Management Branch, for domestic, waterworks, mineral trading, irrigation, mining, industrial power generation, hydraulicking, storage, conservation, fluming, conveying and land improvement purposes. Within the study region, domestic waterworks, irrigation, industrial power generation, and conservation purposes require major allocations of freshwater. Water licences have precedence according to the date of issuance so that in low flow situations some users may be denied their allocation. Currently, groundwater may be diverted without licence.

For all but the largest diversions, water licences are reviewed on an ad hoc basis with watershed studies limited to specific issues identified in the application (personal communication - Regional Engineer, Water Management Branch, Nanaimo, 1980). Studies of watershed characteristics upon which to determine optimal patterns of development and resource allocations are not yet available. Streams can be licensed for diversions in excess of the recorded minimum daily discharge. Although not all users divert the maximum licensed quantities, it is possible that under extreme conditions, shortfalls in water supplies could result for some users.

An interagency referral system currently used in British Columbia is designed to account for the stream resource flow requirements of all users in order to avoid conflicts, or situations where users are lost. For instance, for the survival, migration, and spawning of fish a certain discharge is required. Spawning habitat increases or decreases with greater or lesser flows; migration is restricted or blocked at extremely high or low flows, and survival is possible only at certain water temperatures which, in small streams, depends greatly on the discharge. Similarly, recreational use (canoeing) is possible only within a given range of discharges. In the study region, minimum flows for fisheries, recreation, wildlife, or domestic uses are not available.

Water Quality and Waste Management

Water quality comes under the purview of both the provincial and federal governments. As numerous acts regulate the myriad activities involving the use of water, only the major legislation is reviewed here.

Federal Legislation

The Canada Water Act and the Fisheries Act are the most powerful federal statutes. Under the provisions of the Canada Water Act the federal government sets national effluent standards and co-operates with the provinces in controlling pollution of specified water bodies. Part one of the Act allows the federal government, on federally owned water bodies, or the federal and provincial governments to designate a water body as a water management area, thus bringing into force regulations against effluent discharges. Part two of the Act deals with the problem of eutrophication by regulating the concentration of nutrients in cleaning agents that are imported into Canada. The Fisheries Act prohibits the discharge of deleterious substances in any waters frequented by fish. This includes logging debris, obstacles to migration, and activities within the watershed that lead to erosion problems, stream siltation, or the loss of fish, fish eggs, and other marine organisms.

The Canada Shipping Act's environmental provisions apply to all ships (not propelled by oars) in Canadian waters south of the 60° north latitude, including all internal waters, the territorial sea, and all fishing zones established pursuant to the Territorial Sea and Fishing Zones Act. The Canada Shipping Act itself does not prohibit discharges, but authorizes the Federal Cabinet to make regulations prohibiting the discharge from ships of any pollutant specified. The Oil Pollution Prevention Regulations (oils and persistent oily mixtures), the Pollutant Substances Regulations (arsenic, lead, mercury, and phosphorous, etc.) and the Garbage Pollution Prevention Regulations (garbage) are made under this Act. While this represents strong legislation, there are several significant limitations which might hamper its effectiveness in a given situation.

The Ocean Dumping Control Act prohibits the deliberate disposal of substances from ships, aircraft or platforms. It does not, however, apply to accidental discharges, discharges incidental to their normal operation, sea and mineral resources exploitation, or discharges necessary to avoid danger to human life, ship, or aircraft. Further, under the Act, the Minister may issue permits for dumping provided such dumping is not prohibited by another act of parliament.

The Canada Ports Corporation Act, in replacing the National Harbours Board Act, does not specifically deal with environmental protection, but does provide considerable autonomy for "...the direction, conduct and government of the local port corporation and its employees, and the administration, management and control of the harbour, works and property..".

Under the Government Harbours and Port Facilities Act the Governor-in-Council may similarly regulate all works and operations and provide for any protection of persons within the limits of any public harbour or at any public port facility.

Provincial Legislation

The Pollution Control Act prohibits the direct or indirect discharge of contaminants into any water body without a permit. A referral system requires the Comptroller of Water Rights, the Ministry of Agriculture, the Ministry of Health, and the Ministry of Environment to be notified and sent copies of applications to discharge wastes. The federal Department of Fisheries and Oceans usually co-operates in the setting of terms of permits in order to protect fishery concerns. Pollution control objectives are published for forest products, municipal discharges, food processing, mining, and chemical and petroleum products. They are used primarily as guidelines and have minimal legal force. Landfill sites are also regulated by permit.

The Health Act establishes local Boards of Health comprised of the municipal council. The boards have relatively wide powers to deal with nuisances that relate to public health. An official notice to terminate a nuisance is required before action can be taken under the Act. The discretionary power is held by the Minister and the local board. The Municipal Act deals with nuisances that may not directly involve the public health.

5.8.4 MARINE BIRDS

Legislation - The primary protection for marine birds in Canada is the Migratory Birds Convention Act of 1917. Several of the fifteen orders represented by this Act are identified in Table 36. The Act affords protection of waters frequented by migratory birds, while the Migratory Bird Regulations prohibit the deposit of oil, oily water and other substances in waters frequented by birds. Further, the Regulations prohibits the disturbance of bird nests and shelters except in accordance with a permit. The Canada Wildlife Act authorizes the acquisition of lands for wildlife research and conservation; the establishment of bird sanctuaries is authorized by the Migratory Bird Sanctuary Regulations, and on federal lands, the Wildlife Area Regulations establish wildlife areas in which public use and activities may be restricted.

Provincial legislation encompassing the protection of marine birds and their habitat is the Wildlife Act, which provides for the designation, acquisition, management and protection of wildlife habitat; and the Ecological Reserves Act which provides habitat and inviolate protection to a number of major breeding colonies in British Columbia. Indirectly, the Environmental Management Act affords protection by providing for the development of management plans and environmental guidelines, the means to investigate environmental

TABLE 36 REPRESENTATIVE TAXONOMIC BIRD GROUPS PROTECTED UNDER THE
MIGRATORY BIRDS CONVENTION ACT

<u>Order</u>	<u>Family</u>	<u>Genus</u>	<u>Species</u>	<u>Common</u>
<i>Gaviiformes</i>	<i>Gaviidae</i>	<i>Gavia</i>	<i>artica</i>	Arctic Loon
<i>Podicipediformes</i>	<i>Podicipedidae</i>	<i>Aechmosporus</i>	<i>occidentalis</i>	Western Grebe
<i>Procellariiformes</i>	<i>Hydrobatidae</i>	<i>Oceanodroma</i>	<i>leucorha</i>	Leach's Storm Petrel
<i>Ciconiiformes</i>	<i>Ardeidae</i>	<i>Ardea</i>	<i>herodias</i>	Great Blue Heron
<i>Anseriformes</i>	<i>Anatidae</i>	<i>Oor</i>	<i>buccinator</i>	Trumpeter Swan
		<i>Anas</i>	<i>platyrhynchos</i>	Mallard
		<i>Aythya</i>	<i>marila</i>	Greater Scaup
		<i>Melanitta</i>	<i>perspicillata</i>	Surf Scoter
		<i>Mergus</i>	<i>merganser</i>	Common Merganser
<i>Charadriiformes</i>	<i>Haematopodidae</i>	<i>Haematopus</i>	<i>bachmani</i>	Black Oystercatcher
	<i>Charadriidae</i>	<i>Charadrius</i>	<i>hiaticula</i>	Ringed Plover
	<i>Scolopacidae</i>	<i>Calidris</i>	<i>mauri</i>	Western Sandpiper
		<i>C.</i>	<i>alpina</i>	Dunlin
	<i>Laridae</i>	<i>Larus</i>	<i>glaucescens</i>	Glaucous-winged Gull
	<i>Alcidae</i>	<i>Uria</i>	<i>aalgae</i>	Common Murre
		<i>Brachyramphus</i>	<i>marmoratus</i>	Marbled Murrelet
		<i>Cerorhinca</i>	<i>monocerata</i>	Rhinoceros Auklet
		<i>Lunda</i>	<i>cirrhata</i>	Tufted Puffin

SOURCE: Adapted from

Canada, Department of Environment. 1980. Birds Protected in Canada under the
Migratory Birds Convention Act. Occasional Paper Number 1. Canadian Wildlife
Service. Ottawa.

impact and protection issues, the means to prevent environmental damage, and a process for enforcement. Within this study area protection is also afforded marine birds, albeit indirectly, by the Parks Act through the presence of several marine parks.

5.8.5 LOCAL PLANNING

Local governments, i.e. regional districts and municipalities, may regulate the use of the foreshore by designating waterfront zones. The regional districts in the study area have not adopted any formal waterfront zones, but instead use upland zoning to accommodate waterfront uses. The Village of Sechelt and the Town of Gibsons are the only incorporated areas which have designated zones for waterfront useage.

The Sunshine Coast Regional District plans to introduce a waterfront zoning by-law which would entail designating the waterfront a residential zone in order to prevent unwarranted development of the foreshore. In the future, the District intends to identify deep water access sites for industrial uses and then designate these areas as industrial waterfront zones.

Another means of controlling waterfront development is through the establishment of development control areas. These areas are established to ensure that special precautions and/or protection are provided. Development control areas are based upon Section 717 (Development Permits) of the Municipal Act which states in part that "Permits may require the preservation or dedication of natural water courses and the construction of works to preserve and beautify them in accordance with the terms and conditions specified in the permit and require that an area of land specified in the permit above the natural boundary of streams, rivers, lakes or the ocean remain free of development except as specified in the permit". (Province of British Columbia, 1980).

Currently, zoning by-laws are being drafted by the Powell River Regional District which would establish development permit areas for commercial and industrial developments along the coast. Zones will be established also for the protection of mariculture areas (F. Ladret, personal communication, 1983).

Regional Settlement and Community Plans

The Municipal Act (Province of B.C., 1980) authorizes local governments to provide five types of plans: regional, official regional, official settlement, community and official community. Each of these plans is designed to fulfill specific goals, objectives and requirements under the Municipal Act. Official plans refer to those plans which have undergone public hearings and have been adopted as by-laws. Unofficial plans, on the other hand, have neither been adopted as by-laws, nor undergone public hearings. They function as an interim means of planning, and provide temporary land designations. They may be dissolved at any time, and have no force or effect under legislation.

Regional Plans

Regional plans as defined under the Municipal Act, are " a general scheme without detail for the projected uses of land within the regional district, including the location of major highways". The regional board can designate a regional plan as an official regional plan. Regional boards are expected, upon completion of an Official Regional Plan, to prepare an Official Settlement Plan (O.S.P.). The O.S.P. encompasses that area of the regional district outside a city, district, town or village, and may apply to all or part of that area. O.S.P.s require the approval of regional council and the provincial Ministry of Municipal Affairs. They must include: the identification of major land useage; the density of residential development; the protection and preservation of special lands, i.e. recreational, historic, scientific, and agricultural; the proposed sequence of urban development; and the resultant infrastructure requirements and plans.

Official Community Plans

Official community plans are designed specifically for municipalities, and are approved solely by municipal councils. Under the Act, community plans are defined as an expression of policy for any use of land, including surfaces of water, or the pattern of the subdivision of land. These plans require public hearings before they become official, but the Minister of Municipal Affairs does not need to approve them. The content requirements for these plans are similar to the requirements of the Official Settlement Plans under section 810 of the Municipal Act. They must contain "a statement of broad social, economic and environmental objectives to be achieved by implementation of the plan and a statement of policies of the municipal council on the general form and character of the future land use pattern in the area covered by the plan".

Community Plans

Community Plans refer to working plans that are in the conceptual stages. They are neither regulated by by-law nor approved by council. The Ministry of Municipal Affairs discourages their use.

This report is only part of the documentation available. Other sections of the Coastal Resources Folio, South Mainland Coast (Gibsons Landing to the Redonda Islands) British Columbia include: Introduction, Coastal Resource Map Series (1:50,000), Tables, Pender Harbour Map Series (1:10,000), Sources and Glossary.

SECTION 6: SOURCES

PREPARED BY

T.J. Summers
M.A. Lashmar
M.W. Dunn
D.A. Wolff

EDITED BY

M.W. Dunn
T.J. Summers

**LANDS DIRECTORATE
ENVIRONMENT CANADA
VANCOUVER, B.C.**

February 1984

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
6.1 INTRODUCTION	1
6.2 COASTAL RESOURCES MAP SERIES (1:50,000)	1
.2.1 Theme 1: Marine Sediments	1
Personal Communications	3
Videotapes	3
.2.2 Theme 2: Submarine Topography	4
Personal Communications	4
.2.3 Theme 3: Physical Shorezone	5
Personal Communications	6
Videotapes.....	6
Aerial photographs.....	6
.2.4 Theme 4: Generalized Terrain Limitations.....	6
Fault Lines	7
.2.5 Themes 5 and 6: Oceanography.....	7
.2.6 Theme 7: Water Resources	15
River Discharges	15
Water Licenses	15
Marine/River Outfalls and Landfill Sites	15
Shellfish Sanitary Surveys	16
Shellfish Closure Areas	16
.2.7 Theme 8: Seaweeds, Saltmarshes, Sand Dune Ecology, and Marine Mammals	17
Kelp Survey	17
Zostera Survey	17
Saltmarshes	17
Sand Dunes	17
Marine Mammals	17
Foreshore Plans	17
Kombu Mariculture Sites	17

	<u>Page</u>
.2.8	Theme 9: Marine Bird Surveys18
	Waterfowl Survey18
	Seabird Colonies18
.2.9	Theme 10 and 11: Fish and Shellfish Resources 19
	Personal Communications (1982-83) 22
.2.10	Theme 12.1: Generalized Zoning and Marine Facilities .. 23
	Theme 12.2: Land/Water Use..... 23
.2.11	Theme 13: Land/Water Use Plans and Proposals..... 23
.2.12	Theme 14: Selected Administrative Boundaries..... 23
.2.13	Theme 15: Land/Water Status 23
.2.14	Theme 16: Forest Cover 23
.2.15	Theme 17: Recreational Areas, Special Features, and Access 24
	Provincial Parks and Reserves 24
	Ecological Reserves 24
	Provincial Wildlife Management Area 24
	National Second Century Fund 24
	Archeological Sites 24
	Forest Service Camp Sites 24
	Anchorage 24
	Scuba Diving Sites 24
	Shoreline Process Features 25
	Recreation Area and Activities25
	Sandy Beaches25
	Public Access 25
6.3	LAND/WATER USE AND STATUS TABLES..... 26
.3.1	Regional and Local Zoning 26
	Regional Districts26
	Municipalities26
	Islands Trust26

	<u>Page</u>
.3.2 Marinas, Bulk Oil Storage Facilities and Sewage Systems and Treatment	26
.3.3 Land Use Plans and Proposals.....	27
Regional Districts	27
Municipalities	27
Islands Trust	27
.3.4 Land and Water Status	27
.3.4.1 Provincial Crown Land	27
Provincial Parks	27
Provincial Reserves	27
Foreshore Leases	28
Oyster Leases	28
Regional Parks	28
.3.4.2 Federal Crown Land	28
Indian Reserves	28
Other Federal Property	28
.3.4.3 Alienated Land	28
Tree Farms	28
Tree Farm Licence	28
6.4 Pender Harbour Map Series	29
Base Maps	29
Map Themes	29
6.5 COMPANION REPORT	30
.5.1 The South Mainland Coast Economy	30
Personal Communications (1983)	31
.5.2 The Physical Setting	32
.5.2.1 Physiography	32
.5.2.2 Geology	32

	<u>Page</u>
.5.2.3 Soils	33
.5.2.4 Climate	33
Personal Communications	33
.5.2.5 Physical Oceanography	34
.5.2.6 Water Resources	34
Selected Literature	34
6.5.3 Biological Resources	35
.5.3.1 Terrestrial Vegetation	35
.5.3.2 Seaweeds and Saltmarshes	35
Personal Communication	36
.5.3.3 Marine Mammals	36
Personal Communications	36
.5.3.4 Marine Birds	36
Supplementary Reading	37
.5.3.5 Fish and Shellfish Resources	38
.5.3.5.1 Fisheries (finfish)	38
.5.3.5.1.1 Anadromous and resident species	38
.5.3.5.1.2 Groundfish	42
.5.3.5.1.3 Herring	46
.5.3.5.2 Shellfish	49
.5.3.5.3 Species Names	54
.5.3.5.4 Personal Communications	54

	<u>Page</u>
6.5.4. Recreational Resources	55
Supplemental Literature	55
6.5.5. Physical Processes and Energy	56
.5.5.1 Regional Wave Climate	56
Personal Communications	59
.5.5.2 Circulation	59
.5.5.3 Atmospheric Mixing	60
.5.5.4 Seismic Hazard	60
6.5.6 Factors of Biological Productivity	61
6.5.7 The Administration and Management of Coastal Resources	62

6.1

INTRODUCTION

Coastal Zone Resource Subcommittee, 1978. The Management of Coastal Resources in British Columbia. Vol.1: State-of-the-Art. Prepared for the B.C. Land Resources Steering Committee. Fisheries and Environment Canada, Lands Directorate. Vancouver. Unpublished.

Environment Canada, Lands Directorate, 1981. Coastal Resources Folio; East Vancouver Island (Race Point to Hatch Point and adjacent islands). British Columbia. 2 vols. Vancouver.

Environment Canada, Lands Directorate, 1982. Coastal Resources Folio; East Coast Vancouver Island (Hatch Point to Ledingham Creek) British Columbia. 2 vols. Vancouver.

6.2

COASTAL RESOURCES MAP SERIES (1:50,000)

6.2.1 Theme 1: Marine Sediments

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981. Coastal Resources Folio: East Coast Vancouver Island. Marine Substrates Map Series (scale 1:50,000). Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1982. Sunshine Coast: Vancouver Harbour to Desolation Sound. Chart 3311 (map scale 1:40,000). Canadian Hydrographic Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.). Hydrographic Field Sheets. Canadian Hydrographic Service, Sidney. (scales as follows.)

<u>Chart</u>	<u>Scale</u>	<u>Chart</u>	<u>Scale</u>	<u>Chart</u>	<u>Scale</u>
1194-L	1:35,000	2224-L	1:36,480	2256-L	1:10,000
2201-L	1:24,320	2227-L	1:36,000	2259-S	1:36,480
2212-L	1:36,480	2229-L	1:30,000	2260-S	1:36,480
2216-S	1:12,160	2230-L	1:30,000	2274-L	1:30,000
2217-S	1:36,480	2231-L	1:36,480	2276-L	1:30,000
2218-L	1:36,480	2234-S	1:6,000	2277-L	1:30,000
2221-L	1:36,000	2235-L	1:36,480	2279-L	1:30,000
2221-S	1:36,480	2244-L	1:30,000	2283-L	1:30,000
2222-S	1:12,160	2245-L	1:24,320	2284-L	1:30,000
2223-S	1:24,320				

Clague, J.J., 1975a. Quaternary Geology, Northern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 75-1A. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

Clague, J.J., 1975b. Surficial Sediment of the Northern Strait of Georgia British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 75-1B. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

- Clague, J.J., 1976. Quadra Sand and its Relationship to the Late Glaciation of Southwestern British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences 13, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., 1977a. Holocene Sediments in Northern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 77-1A. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., 1977b. Quadra Sand: A study of the Late Pleistocene Geology and Geomorphic History of Coastal Southwest British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 77-17. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Cockbain, A.E., 1963a. Submarine Topography and Sediment Thickness in the Southern Strait of Georgia. Institute of Oceanography MSS Report 14. University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- Cockbain, A.E., 1963b. Distribution of Sediments on the Continental Shelf off the Southern British Columbia Coast. Institute of Oceanography MSS Report 15. University of British Columbia, Vancouver.
- Fisher, D., n.d. Coastal Inventory Vancouver Island and Strait of Georgia. Geological Survey of Canada, Pacific Geoscience Centre, Sidney. Unpublished.
- Gardner, R.H., 1976. Bibliography of Marine Geoscience Information, Pacific Regions of Canada. Biological Survey of Canada, Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa. Unpublished.
- Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia, 1962. Sediment Grain-size Analysis, 1960-61. Manuscript Report 20. Vancouver.
- Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia, 1963. Sediment Grain-size Analysis, 1951, 1960, 1962. Manuscript Report 22. Vancouver.
- MacDonald, R.D. and J.W. Murray, 1969. Marine Geology of Upper Jervis Inlet, British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 69-1A. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources.
- Mathews, W.H. and J.W. Murray, 1966. Recent Sediments and their Environment of Deposition, Strait of Georgia and Fraser River Delta. Tenneco Oil and Minerals Ltd., Calgary.
- Pharo, C.H., 1972. Sediments of the Central and Southern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Department of Geology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Unpublished Ph.D. thesis.

- Pharo, C.H. and W.C. Barnes, 1976. Distribution of Surficial Sediments of the Central and Southern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences 13.
- Reimer, P.D., 1979. Report on the Marine Geophysical Reconnaissance Conducted in Sechelt Inlet during November 1979. Thalassic Data Limited for B.C. Hydro and Power Authority, Vancouver. Unpublished.
- Thalassic Data Limited, 1975. Report on the Geophysical/Geological Survey Conducted in the Northern Strait of Georgia and Malaspina Strait during August, 1975. B.C. Hydro and Power Authority, Vancouver. Unpublished.
- Thalassic Data Limited, 1977. Report on the Geophysical/Geological Survey Conducted in the Waters around Northern Lasqueti Island during May and June, 1977. B.C. Hydro and Power Authority, Vancouver. Unpublished.
- Thalassic Data Limited, 1978. Report on the Marine Geophysical/Geological Survey Conducted in the South Reach of Agamemnon Channel during October and November, 1978. B.C. Hydro and Power Authority, Vancouver. Unpublished.
- Tiffin, D.L. and J.J. Clague, 1976. Continuous Seismic Profile Data from the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. (NTS 92F). Geological Survey of Canada Open File 394. Canada Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Waldichuk, M., 1953. Character of the Bottom. Vol. II: Oceanography of the Strait of Georgia. Progress Report 95. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Ottawa.

Personal Communications

- Clague, Dr. J.J., 1982. Geological Survey of Canada, Vancouver.
- Clayton, L., 1982. Marine Resources Branch, Ministry of Environment, Victoria.
- Luternauer, Dr. J., 1982. Pacific Geoscience Centre, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney.
- McGee, T., 1982. Thalassic Data Limited, Vancouver.

Videotapes

- Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Aerial videotape flight for shorezone survey during August; 19-3/4" videotape cassettes; 450 minutes; colour. Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

6.2.2 Theme 2: Submarine Topography

Cockbain, A.E., 1963a. Submarine Topography and Sediment Thickness in the Southern Strait of Georgia. Institute of Oceanography MSS Report 14. University of British Columbia, Vancouver.

Cockbain, A.E., 1963b. Distribution of Sediments on the Continental Shelf off the Southern British Columbia Coast. Institute of Oceanography MSS Report 15. University of British Columbia.

Mathews, W.H. and J.W. Murray, 1966. Recent Sediments and their Environment of Deposition, Strait of Georgia and Fraser River Delta, Tenneco Oil and Minerals Ltd., Calgary.

Pharo, C.H., 1972. Sediments of the Central and Southern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Department of Geology, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Unpublished Ph. D. thesis.

Personal Communications

Luternauer, Dr. J., 1982 - Pacific Geoscience Centre, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney.

McGee, T., 1982 - Thalassic Data Limited, Vancouver.

6.2.3 Theme 3: Physical Shorezone

Brown, D.W. and W.F. Baird, 1980. The Use of Wave Energy to predict the Effects of Changes in Great Lakes Water Levels on Shore Erosion. Canadian Coastal Conference Proceedings. National Research Council, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals. Volume 5 -Wind 1951 to 1980. Atmospheric Environment Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1976. Oil and Chemical Spill Countermeasures Map Series: Physical Base Land Status, Land and Water Use. Maps (scale 1:50,000). Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.

Dunn, M.W., (in press). Marine Sediments Map Series. Coastal Resources Folio South Mainland Coast, British Columbia. Maps (scale 1:50,000). Canada, Department of Environment, Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

British Columbia, Environment and Land Use Committee, 1976. Coastal Zone Information for Determining Recreation Potential of the Malaspina Peninsula. Environment and Land Use Committee Secretariat, Victoria. Unpublished.

Fisher, D., (n.d.). Coastal Inventory Vancouver Island and Strait of Georgia. Geological Survey of Canada, Pacific Geoscience Centre, Sidney. Unpublished.

Frank, R.J., (n.d.) Coastal Classification Saltery Bay to Lang Bay, British Columbia. Black and white air photos and data sheets scale 1:20,000. Powell River Regional District, Powell River. Unpublished.

Guenther, D.B. and D.A. Faulkner, 1979. Climate of Strait of Georgia - A Boater's Guide. Canada, Department of Environment, Atmospheric Environment Service, Vancouver. Unpublished.

Howes, D.E. and E.H. Owens (n.d.) Descriptive Terminology and Definitions of Terms for Shorezone Classification. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch, Victoria. Unpublished.

Muller, J.E., 1971. Geological Reconnaissance Map of Vancouver Island and Gulf Islands. Map (scale 1:330,000). Geological Survey of Canada Open File, Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

Roddick, J.A., J.E. Muller and A.V. Okulitch, 1979. Fraser River: British Columbia - Washington. Geological Atlas Sheet 92. Geological Survey of Canada Map 1386A (scale 1:1,000,000). Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

Personal Communications

Clayton, L., 1982. Marine Resources Branch. Ministry of Environment, Victoria.

Videotapes

Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Aerial Videotape Flight for Shorezone Survey during August; 19 - 3/4" videotape cassettes; 450 minutes; colour. Lands Directorate, Vancouver, B.C.

Aerial Photographs

Provincial

BC 78032	1:20,000	B. and W.	May 1978
BC 78071	1:20,000	B. and W.	July 1978
BC 80060	1:20,000	B. and W.	July 1980
BC 80061	1:20,000	B. and W.	July 1980
BC 80080	1:20,000	B. and W.	August 1980
BC 80081	1:20,000	B. and W.	August 1980
BC 80088	1:20,000	B. and W.	August 1980
BC 81007	1:10,000	B. and W.	March 1981

6.2.4 Theme 4: Generalized Terrain Limitations

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1976. Terrain Classification System. Environment and Land Use Committee Secretariat, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1980. Terrain Classification Quadra Project Area (scale 1:50,000). Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria.

British Columbia, Environment and Land Use Committee, 1975. Biophysical Assessment Lasqueti Island. Map (scale 1:25,000). Resource Analysis Unit, Victoria. Unpublished.

Howes, D.E., 1978. Mapping Unstable Terrain in B.C. - A Preliminary Assessment. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria.

Howes, D.E., 1981. Terrain Inventory and Geological Hazards: Northern Vancouver Island. APD Bulletin 5. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria.

Maynard, D., 1979. Terrain Capability for Residential Settlements: Summary Report. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria. Unpublished.

Ryder, J.M. and B. MacLean, 1980. Guide to the Preparation of a Geological Hazards Map. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Terrestrial Studies Branch, Victoria. Unpublished.

Fault Lines

Muller, J.E., 1971. Geological Reconnaissance Map of Vancouver Island and Gulf Islands (scale 1:330,000). Geological Survey of Canada Open File. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

Roddick, J.A., J.E. Muller and A.V. Okulitch, 1979. Fraser River: British Columbia - Washington. Geological Atlas Sheet 92. Geological Survey of Canada Map 1386A (scale 1:1,000,000). Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

6.2.5 Themes 5 and 6: Oceanography Sources

Physical Oceanographic Station Distribution

Arney, D.B., and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Pender Harbour and Outlying Areas. Report EPS 5-PR-74-11. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.

Bishop, S.O., J.D. Fulton, O.D. Kennedy and K. Stephens, 1966. Data Record; Physical, Chemical, and Biological Data. Strait of Georgia, March to October, 1965. Manuscript Report OL No. 211. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo.

Bourne, N., 1979. Pacific Oyster Breeding in Pendrell Sound, 1974. Fisheries and Marine Service, Technical Report No. 858. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Nanaimo.

Bourne, N., 1978. Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia 1971, 1972, and 1973. Fisheries and Marine Service, Technical Report No. 781. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Nanaimo.

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1979-1982. Oyster Lease Application Assessment Data, on file. Marine Resources Branch, Nanaimo.

Buckley, J.R., B. Humphrey, and B.R. de Lange Boom, 1980. Bottom Currents in the Western Strait of Georgia. Vol. 1 and 2. Seakem Oceanography Ltd., Sidney. Unpublished.

- Canada, Department of Environment, 1972. Data Record of Current Observations, Vol. IX, Strait of Georgia, Cape Lazo to Grief Point, 1970. Water Management Service, Marine Sciences Directorate, Victoria. Unpublished.
- Canada, Department of Environment, 1972. Data Record of Current Observations, Vol. X, Strait of Georgia, Gabriola Island to Gower Point, 1969-1972. Water Management Service, Marine Sciences Directorate, Victoria. Unpublished.
- Canada, Department of Environment, 1973. Data Record of Current Observations, Vol. XIII, Strait of Georgia, Northwest Bay to McNaughton Point, 1968-1969. Water Management Service, Marine Sciences Directorate, Victoria.
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans 1978-81. Computer files of oceanographic data collected during Pendrell Sound Oyster Breeding Monitoring Program, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.
- Canadian Hydrographic Service, 1963. Current Observations, Vol.1, Strait of Georgia. British Columbia, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Marine Sciences Branch, Victoria.
- Cooper, K.R., and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of the Southern Portion of the Sechelt Peninsula and Sechelt Inlet. Report EPS 5-PR-74-12. Canada, Department of the Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.
- Crean, P.B., and A.B. Ages. 1971. Oceanographic Records from Twelve Cruises in the Strait of Georgia and Juan de Fuca Strait, 1968. 5 volumes. British Columbia, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Marine Sciences Branch, Victoria. Unpublished.
- Derksen, G.D., and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Lasqueti Island. Report EPS 5-PR-74-8, Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.
- Derksen, G.D., and T.J. Tevendale, 1973. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Campbell River, Quadra Island, Cortes Island and West Redonda Island. Report EPS 5-PR-73-6. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.

- Fulton, J.D., O.D. Kennedy, K. Stephens, and J. Skelding, 1967. Data Record; Physical, Chemical and Biological Data, Strait of Georgia, 1966. Manuscript Report No. 915. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Fulton, J.D., O.D. Kennedy, K. Stephens, and J. Skelding, 1968. Data Record; Physical, Chemical and Biological Data, Strait of Georgia, 1967. Manuscript Report No. 968. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Fulton, J.D., O.D. Kennedy, J. Skelding, and K. Stephens, 1969. Physical, Chemical and Biological Data, Strait of Georgia, 1968. Manuscript Report No. 1049. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Heritage, G.D., P.A. Breen, N.F. Bourne, 1976. Pacific Oyster Breeding in Pendrell Sound, 1975. Manuscript Report Series No. 1406. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Heritage, G.D., N. Bourne, S.W. Smith, 1977. Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia 1976. Manuscript Report Series No. 1419. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Heritage, G.D., and N. Bourne, 1979. Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia 1977. Technical Report No. 882. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo.
- Herlinveaux, R.H., 1968. Bottom Temperature in Jervis Inlet, B.C. Manuscript Report No. 1006. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Herlinveaux, R.H., O.D. Kennedy, and H.J. Hollister. 1960. Oceanographic Data Record, Coastal-Seaways Project, November 15 to December 11, 1959. Manuscript Report OL No. 58. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1953. B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1951. Data Report No.1. Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1953.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1952. Data Report No. 2. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1955.
C.G.M.V. "Cancolim 11". Survey of the B.C. Coast, 1953.
Data Report No. 4. Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1955.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1954. Data Report No. 6. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1955.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1955. Data Report No. 7. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1956.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1956. Data Report No. 8. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1958.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1957. Data Report No. 11. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1959.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1958. Data Report No. 13. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1959.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1959. Data Report No. 15. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1961.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1960. Data Report No. 17. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1962.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1961. Data Report No. 19. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1963.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1962. Data Report No. 21. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1964.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1963. Data Report No. 23. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1965.
B.C. and Alaska Inlet Cruises, 1964. Data Report No. 24.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1966.
B.C. and Alaska Inlet Cruises, 1965. Data Report No. 25.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1967.
B.C. and Alaska Inlet Cruises, 1966. Data Report No. 26.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1968.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1967. Data Report No. 27. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1969.
B.C. Inlet Cruises, 1968. Data Report No. 28. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1970.
B.C. Inlets and Pacific Cruises, 1969. Data Report No. 30.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia. 1971.
B.C. Inlets and Pacific Cruises, 1970. Data Report No. 32.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British Columbia, 1972.
B.C. Inlets Cruises, 1971. Data Report No. 33. Vancouver.
Unpublished.

Institute of Oceanography, University of British
B.C. Inlets and Pacific Cruises, 1972. Data Report No. 34.
Vancouver. Unpublished.

Kay, B.H., and K.D. Ferguson, 1979.

Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Vancouver Island Inland Coastline from Duval Point to False Head, including Hardy Bay and Beaver Harbour, British Columbia, 1978. Regional Program Report 79-18. Canada, Department of Environment, Vancouver.

Kay, B.H., 1976.

Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of the Mainland Coastline, Scuttle Bay to Saltery Bay, British Columbia, 1975. Report EPS 5-PR-75.14. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.

Landry, L.P., 1976.

Radar Tracking of Drift Drogues in Pendrell Sound and Port Mellon, June and September, 1974. Institute of Ocean Sciences, Victoria. Unpublished.

Lane, R.K., R.H. Herlinveaux, W.R. Harling and H.J. Hollister, 1960. Oceanographic Data Record, Coastal and Seaways Projects, October 3-26, 1960. Manuscript Report OL No. 283. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.

Nelson, H., 1979. Pulp Mill Environmental Impact Assessment, MacMillan Bloedel Ltd., Powell River Division, Regional Program Report 79-14. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.

Pacific Oceanographic Group, 1953.

Physical and Chemical Data Records, Strait of Georgia, 1930, 1931, 1932. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.

Pacific Oceanographic Group, 1954.

Physical and Chemical Data Record, Strait of Georgia, 1949-1953, with Appendix I - Current Measurements, March 1953. Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.

- Pacific Oceanographic Group, 1959.
Physical and Chemical Data Record, Coastal Seaways Project,
November 12 - December 5, 1958. Manuscript Report OL No. 36.
Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Pacific Oceanographic Group, 1959.
Physical and Chemical Data Record, Coastal Seaways Project,
March 31 - April 22, 1959. Manuscript Report OL No. 47.
Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Pacific Oceanographic Group, 1959.
Oceanographic Data Record, Coastal Seaways Project,
June 8 - July 1, 1959. Manuscript Report No. 52.
Fisheries Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Quayle, D.B., 1974.
Pendrell Sound Oyster Breeding 1950-1970.
Manuscript Report Series No. 1291. Fisheries Research
Board of Canada, Nanaimo.
- Stephens, K., 1968.
Surface Distribution of Chlorophyll in the Strait of Georgia,
1966-1967. Manuscript Report No. 971. Fisheries Research Board
of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Strickland, J.D.H., 1958.
Data Record and Discussion. Special B.C. Coastal Survey
Measuring Chemical and Light Attenuation Properties, June 23
to July 4, 1958. Manuscript Report OL No. 30. Fisheries
Research Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.
- Sullivan, D.L., 1980.
Marine Environmental Surveillance Monitoring at B.C. Pulp
Mills, 1979. Regional Program Report 81-16. Canada,
Department of Environment, Environmental Protection
Service, Vancouver.
- Sullivan, D.R., 1981.
Marine Environmental Surveillance Monitoring at B.C. South
Coast Pulp Mills, 1980. Regional Program Report 81-26. Canada,
Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service,
Vancouver. Unpublished.
- Waldichuk, M., J.R. Markert, and J.H. Meikle, 1968.
Fraser River Estuary. Burrard Inlet, Howe Sound and
Malaspina Strait. Physical and Chemical Oceanographic Data,
1957-1966. Manuscript Report No. 939. Fisheries Research
Board of Canada, Nanaimo. Unpublished.

6.2.6 Theme 7: WATER RESOURCES

River Discharges

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981a. Surface Water Data Reference Index. Inland Waters Directorate, Water Resources Branch, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981b. Surface Water Data. Inland Waters Directorate, Water Resources Branch, Ottawa.

Water Licences

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. Computer printouts to 17.09.82. Water Management Branch, Victoria.

Marine/River Outfalls and Landfill Sites

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. (Unpublished maps - 1:50,000). Waste Management Branch, Nanaimo.

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. (Unpublished maps - 1:50,000). Waste Management Branch, Surrey.

Shellfish Sanitary Surveys

- Arney, D.B., and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Pender Harbour and Outlying Areas. EPS 5-PR-74-11. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.
- Cooper, K.R., and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of the Southern Portion of the Sechelt Peninsula and Sechelt Inlet. EPS 5-PR-74-12. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.
- Derksen, G.D. and T.J. Tevendale, 1974. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of Lasqueti Island. EPS 5-74-8. Canada, Department of Environment Environmental Protection, West Vancouver.
- Higgs, T.W., 1976. Sanitary Survey of Malaspina Strait from Sliammon Point to Grief Point, British Columbia, 1975. EPS 5-PR-75-13. Canada, Department Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.
- Kay, B., B. Kooi, R. Shepherd, and D. Walker, 1982. Shellfish Growing Water Control Program, Annual Review 1981-1982. Regional Program Report 82-3. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.
- Kay, B.H., 1981. Shellfish Growing Water Control Program Annual Review 1980-1981. Regional Program Report No. 81-2. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.
- Kay, B.H., 1976. Shellfish Growing Water Sanitary Survey of the Mainland Coastline, Scuttle Bay to Saltery Bay, British Columbia. EPS 5-PR-75-14. Canada, Department of Environment, Environmental Protection Service, West Vancouver.

Shellfish Closure Areas

- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Schedule I. Operations Centre, Vancouver.

6.2.7 Theme 8: SEaweEDS, SALTMARSHES, SAND DUNE ECOLOGY, AND MARINE MAMMALS

Kelp Survey

Coon, M., 1982. Aerial survey of nereocystis beds. Charts 4 and 5
Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

Zostera Survey

Summers, T.J., 1983. Canada, Department of Environment, Lands
Directorate, Aerial and Water Reconnaissance, Vancouver.

Saltmarshes

Summers, T.J., 1983. Canada, Department of Environment, Lands
Directorate, Aerial and Water Reconnaissance, Vancouver.

Sand Dunes

Summers, T.J., 1983. (Unpublished data.) Canada, Department of
Environment, Lands Directorate, Aerial and Water Reconnaissance,
Vancouver.

Marine Mammals

Bigg, M. 1982. (Unpublished data.) Canada, Department of Fisheries
and Oceans, Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo.

Foreshore Plans

MacLaren Plansearch, 1981. Pender Harbour Crown Foreshore Plan.
Draft Technical Report. Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing,
Land Management Branch, Burnaby.

Kombu Mariculture Sites

Druehl, L.D., 1981. The Development of an Edible Kelp Culture
Technology for British Columbia. Third Annual Report.
British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources
Branch, Victoria.

6.2.8 Theme 9: MARINE BIRD SURVEYS

Waterfowl Survey

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, (n.d.) Flight line data sheets. Surveys and Resource Mapping Branch, Victoria.

Ducks Unlimited, (n.d.). Flight line data sheets. Delta.

Waterfowl Habitat

Canada, Department of Environment, 1975. Canada Land Inventory: Land Capability for Wildlife - Waterfowl. Maps (Scale 1:250,000) Lands Directorate, Ottawa.

Summers, T.J., 1983. Field data. Department of Environment, Lands Directorate, Ottawa.

Seabird Colonies

Campbell, R.W., 1976. Seabird Colonies of Vancouver Island and Area. Map. Published by Friends of the Provincial Museum, Victoria.

6.2.9 Theme 10: Fish and Shellfish Resources

Argue, A.W., and K.R. Pitre, 1972. Distribution of Commercial and Sport Vessels Fishing Pacific Salmon in Southern British Columbia Marine Waters, based on overflights from 1965 to 1971. Technical Report 1972-3. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries Service, Vancouver.

British Columbia, Ministry of the Environment. Fisheries Habitat Maps. Fish and Wildlife Branch, Lower Mainland Region, Surrey. Unpublished on file.

British Columbia, Ministry of the Environment. Map of Strait of Georgia Oyster Permit Locations. Marine Resources Branch, Nanaimo. Unpublished.

British Columbia, Ministry of the Environment, 1980. Region II Named Lakes Catalogue - Squamish, Pemberton, Sechelt, Powell River. Fish and Wildlife Branch, Lower Mainland Region, Surrey.

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. Oyster Culture and Management Areas, May 1982. Map. Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of the Environment, 1977-1981. Aquatic Biophysical - Manuscript Maps. Aquatic Studies Branch, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1979. Lang Creek Crown Land Plan. Lands and Housing Division, Surrey.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1979. Malaspina Master Plan. Lands Management Branch, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1981. Pender Harbour Crown Foreshore Plan. Draft. Lower Mainland Region, Burnaby.

Canada, Department of the Environment, 1974. A Visual Presentation of Features Important to Management of the Recreational Fishery. Fisheries and Marine Service, Economics Unit, Vancouver.

- Canada, Department of the Environment, 1976. Oil and Chemical Spill Countermeasures Series. Biological Resources. NHS sheets 3508, 3510, 3577, 3589, 3590 and 3591 (Powell River, Pender Harbour, Sandheads to Ballenas Island, Jervis Inlet and approaches, Ballenas Island to Cape Lazo, Cape Lazo to Discovery Passage). Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, 1978. West Coast Offshore Environment. Map Series. Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver.
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1975-1982. Spawning Files. Vancouver.
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983.
1983 British Columbia tidal waters sport fishing guide.
Information Branch, Vancouver.
- Cox, R.K. and E.M. Charman, 1980. A Survey of Abundance and Distribution (1977) of the Geoduck Clam (*Panope generosa*) in Queen Charlotte, Johnstone and Georgia Straits, B.C. Fisheries Development Report No. 16. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Facchin, A. and G. King, 1980.
Lake Survey and Study Record for the Lower Mainland Region of B.C. Technical Circular No. 47. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.
- Haegele, C.W., 1983.
Herring Spawn Location Maps and Charts. Drafts.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.
- Harding, E.A. and L.J. Erickson, 1975.
An Inventory of Streams on the Sechelt Peninsula. Unpublished Manuscript. British Columbia, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Inventory Section, Victoria.
- Juan de Fuca Environmental Consultants, 1980.
Coastal Recreation Features and Facilities. Maps prepared for Ministry of Lands, Parks, and Housing, and Outdoor Recreation Division, - for Joint Steering Committee of the Estuary, Foreshore Water Log Handling and Transportation Study, Victoria.

- Knapp, W. and M. Lashmar, 1978. MacMillan Bloedel Pulp and Paper Mill (Powell River). Fisheries Resources of Fisheries and Marine Service Statistical Areas 15 and 16. Internal Report. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Habitat Protection Unit, Vancouver.
- Marshall, D.E., R.F. Brown, V.D. Chahley and D.G. Demontier, 1977. Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 13 (Campbell River). Technical Report Series PAC/D-77-1. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.
- Marshall, D.E., R.F. Brown, V.D. Chahley, and L.L. Shannon, 1976. Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 28 (Howe Sound - Burrard Inlet). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-4. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.
- Marshall, D.E., V.D. Chahley and L.L. Shannon, 1976. Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 16 (Pender Harbour). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-1. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.
- Marshall, D.E., V.D. Chahley, and L.L. Shannon, 1976. Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 15 (Powell River). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-2. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.
- The Task Force Technical Working Group, 1971. National Marine Parks, Straits of Georgia and Juan de Fuca. A report to the interdepartmental Task Force on National Marine Parks. Canada, Department of Indian Affairs and Northern Development, National and Historic Parks Branch, Ottawa.
- Walmsley, M. and J. Block, 1976. Coastal Zone Information for Determining Recreation Potential of the Malaspina Peninsula. Environment and Land Use Committee Secretariat, Terrain Systems, Analysis/Interpretation Division, Victoria.

The Coastal Resources map series (1:50,000 and 1:10,000), Fish and Shellfish Resources is based on published and unpublished documents and on the pooled professional knowledge and judgment of specialists in government, university and private agencies whose contributions ranged from site-specific data and local knowledge to region-wide surveys and direction to the relevant literature.

The contributions of the individuals and agencies noted below as well as the assistance of numerous others not included due to space limitations is gratefully acknowledged.

Personal Communications (1982-1983)

Department of Fisheries and Oceans:

Subdistrict Offices:

Neil Armstrong, Powell River
Randy Tancock, Madeira Park

Pacific Region, Vancouver:

Rudy Chiang
Adele Leaney-East
Keni Lorette

Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo:

Neil Bourne Dwight Heritage
Paul Breen Bruce Leaman
Terry Butler Mark Saunders
Al Cass Bill Shaw
Carl Haegele Mike Smith
Steve Head Jurgen Westrheim

District Office, Nanaimo:

Bob Armstrong
Dennis Chalmers
Rick Harbo

Environmental Protection Service, Vancouver:

Bruce Kay

Ministry of Environment:

Aquatics Studies Branch, Victoria

Don Grant
Eero Karanka

Marine Resources Branch:

Ken Albrecht, Nanaimo
Bob Cox, Victoria
Don Tillapough

Fish and Wildlife Branch:

Jamie Stephen, Sechelt
Bill Stalker, Powell River
 (now Chilliwack)

Pete Law Nanaimo
Doug Morrison

Peter Caverhill Lower Mainland Regional Office
Ross Neuman Surrey
John Van Hove

6.2.10 Theme 12.1: Generalized Zoning and Marine Facilities

See 6.3.1. and 6.3.2.

Theme 12.2: Land/Water Use

See 6.3.1 and 6.3.2.

6.2.11 Theme 13: Land/Water Use Plans and Proposals

See 6.3.3.

6.2.12 Theme 14: Selected Administrative Boundaries

See 6.3.

6.2.13 Theme 15: Land/Water Status

See 6.3.4.

6.2.14 Theme 16: Forest Cover

British Columbia Ministry of Forests, 1983. Computer data.
Vancouver Regional Office, Burnaby.

Also see 6.3.4.

6.2.15 Theme 17: RECREATIONAL AREAS, SPECIAL FEATURES, AND ACCESS

Provincial Parks and Reserves

Block, J., 1982. Personal Communication and Departmental Reference Maps. British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks, and Housing, Parks Branch, Victoria.

Morris, J., 1982. Personal Communication and Departmental Reference Maps. British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks, and Housing, Parks Branch, North Vancouver.

Ecological Reserves

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. Departmental Reference Maps. Ecological Reserves Unit, Victoria.

Provincial Wildlife Management Area

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. Departmental Reference Maps. Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

National Second Century Fund Property

National Second Century Fund, 1982. Reference Maps. West Vancouver.

Archeological Sites

British Columbia, Provincial Secretary and Government Services, (n.d.). Departmental Reference Maps. Heritage Conservation Branch, Victoria.

Forest Service Campsites

British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, 1982. Departmental Brochure. Recreation Management Branch, Burnaby.

Anchorage

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (various dates). Hydrographic charts. Canadian Hydrographic Service, Ottawa.

Wolferstan, B., 1982. Cruising Guide to Desolation Sound. Agency Press Ltd., Vancouver.

Scuba Diving Sites

Pratt-Johnson, B., 1977. 141 Dives in the Protected Waters of Washington and British Columbia. Gordon Soules Book Publishers, Vancouver.

Shoreline Process Features

Summers, T.J., 1982. Interpretation of Aerial Photographs and Colour Videotapes. Vancouver.

Recreation Area and Activities

Summers, T.J., 1982. Interpretation of Aerial Photographs and Colour Videotapes. Vancouver.

Sandy Beaches

Dunn, M.W., (in press). Physical Shorezone Map Series: Coastal Resources Folio South Mainland Coast British Columbia. Maps (scale 1:50,000). Canada, Department of Environment, Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Public Access

Summers, T.J., 1982. Interpretation of Aerial Photographs, Colour Videotapes and Base Maps. Vancouver.

6.3. LAND/WATER USE AND STATUS TABLES

6.3.1 Regional and Local Zoning

Regional Districts

Sunshine Coast Regional District.

1982: The Corporation of the Village of Sechelt. Zoning by-law no. 239.*

1979: Village of Gibsons. Zoning by-law no. 350.*

1974: The Sunshine Coast Regional District. Zoning by-law no. 96.*

* Available from: Sunshine Coast Regional District, Sechelt, B.C.

Regional District of Comox-Strathcona.

1970: Cortes Island. Zoning by-law no. 41.

Municipalities

1981: The Corporation of the District of Powell River. Zoning by-law no. 1001.

Islands Trust

1981: Lasqueti Island. Amendment by-law no. 1.

6.3.2 Marinas, Bulk Oil Storage Facilities and Sewage Systems and Treatment

Marinas

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, 1978. Guide to Federal Fishing and Recreational Harbours of British Columbia. Canadian Hydrographic Service for Small Craft Harbours Branch. Sidney.

Eby, P. and Associates Ltd.

1979 Recreational Boating Facility Requirements to 1985 in British Columbia. Prepared for Fisheries and Oceans Canada, Small Craft Harbours Branch. Vancouver.

Reid Crowther & Partners Ltd., Marine Design Associates Ltd., Nova Corp Consulting Inc., 1982. Canada/British Columbia Marine Terminal Facilities Study. Vancouver.

Bulk Storage Facilities

Beech, F.G., O.A. Betts and R.L. Sherwood, 1979. West Coast Oil Spills Countermeasures Study Year 1. Regional Program Report 79-28. Environment Canada, Environmental Protection Service. Vancouver.

6.3.3 Land Use Plans and Proposals

Regional Districts

Sunshine Coast Regional District

1980: Sunshine Coast Regional District Official Regional Plan.
By-law No. 171.

n. d.: Roberts Creek Official Settlement Plan.

Powell River Regional District

1979: Powell River Regional District Draft Regional Plan.

n. d.: Powell River Southern Regional District Settlement Plan.

Comox-Strathcona Regional District

1970: Cortes Island Official Settlement Plan. By-law no. 313.

Municipalities

1981: Village of Sechelt Official Community Plan. By-law no. 237.

1981: The Corporation of the District of Powell River Official Community Plan. Bylaw No, 1000.

Islands Trust

1978: Lasqueti Island Official Community Plan. By-law no. 710.4

6.3.4 Land and Water Status

.3.4.1 Provincial Crown Land

Public Sustained Yield Unit

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, n. d.
Departmental Reference Maps. Surveys and Lands Records Branch.
Vancouver Land Recording District, Victoria.

Provincial Parks

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1982.
Departmental Reference Maps. Surveys and Lands Records Branch.
Vancouver Land Recording District, Victoria.

Provincial Reserves

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1982.
Computer Files. Surveys and Lands Records Branch. Burnaby.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, n. d.
Departmental Reference Maps. Surveys and Lands Records Branch.
Vancouver Land Recording District, Victoria.

Foreshore Leases

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1980.
Computer Files. Surveys and Lands Records Branch, Burnaby.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, n.d.
Departmental Reference Maps. Surveys and Lands Records Branch.
Vancouver Land Recording District, Victoria.

Oyster Leases

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment. 1982. Oyster Culture
and Management Areas; Oyster Culture Leases and Licences. Marine
Resources Branch, Victoria.

Regional Parks

Lefaux, S., 1982. Sunshine Coast Official Regional Parks Plan.
Sunshine Coast Regional District. Sechelt. Third Draft.

Powell River Regional District.
Background Report - Regional Parks, n.d. Powell River.

.3.4.2

Federal Crown Land

Indian Reserves

Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources. Varied.
National Topographic System (Map scale 1:50,000). Surveys and
Mapping Branch, Ottawa.

Canada Department of Indian and Northern Affairs. 1972.
Schedule of Indian Reserves and Settlements - Fraser District 987
(Map scale 1:506,880). Ottawa.

Other Federal Property

Canada, Department of Environment. 1980. Federal Land Mapping
Program (Map scale 1:50,000), Lands Directorate. Vancouver, B.C.

.3.4.3

Alienated Land

Tree Farms

British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, various. Forest Cover Maps
(Map scale 1:20,000). Forest Inventory Division. Vancouver.

Tree Farm Licence

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, n.d.
Departmental Reference Maps (Various scales). Surveys and Lands
Records Branch. Vancouver Land Recording District, Victoria.

6.4

PENDER HARBOUR MAP SERIES (1:10,000)

Base Map

MacLaren Plansearch Ltd., 1982. Pender Harbour Crown Foreshore Plan (Map scale 1:10,000) for British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, Lower Mainland Region, Burnaby.

1961: Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1961. Hydrographic Field Sheet Number 2256L (Map scale 1:10,000). Canadian Hydrographic Service, Sidney, B.C.

Map Themes

Refer to Sources listed for 1:50,000 Map Series.

6.5

COMPANION REPORT

6.5.1 The South Mainland Coast Economy

Boyer, K.R., F. Ladret and S. Gillies, 1977. An Economic Base Study of the Powell River Region. Powell River Regional District, Powell River.

British Columbia, Agricultural Land Commission, 1980. Agricultural Land Reserve Statistics. Victoria.

British Columbia Ferry Corporation, 1982. Monthly Traffic Statistics. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Food, 1979. B.C. Land Inventory Report - Summaries of Agricultural Land Reserve Areas by Regional District and Agricultural Region, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Food, 1980. Agriculture Region Report - South Coastal Agricultural Region. Canada, Department of Regional Economic Expansion, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Agriculture and Food, 1982. B.C. Agriculture Statistics Yearbook. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982. Quantity and Value of British Columbia Fresh Seafood Production in Major Regions by Species and Product Type. (Unpublished Tables). Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, 1983. Annual Mill List. Vancouver Region Office, Burnaby.

British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, 1981. Forest Inventory Data Base. Vancouver Region Office, Burnaby.

British Columbia, Ministry of Industry and Small Business Development, 1983. The Southwestern B.C. Tourism Region, Vancouver.

British Columbia, Ministry of Industry and Small Business Development, Tourism Highlights. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Industry and Small Business Development, Visitors '79 - British Columbia Visitors Travel Survey - 1979. Victoria.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1982. The Tidal Sport Fishing Diary Program Report on the Pilot Years 1979-80. Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Computer Print-Outs
Small Craft Harbours Branch, Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1982. B.C. Catch Statistics
1975-1981. Vancouver.

DPA Consulting Ltd., 1982. Georgia Strait Sport Fishing Creel Survey
1980-1982. Vancouver.

Hall, Strong and Associates Ltd., 1980. An Economic Base Study of the
Sunshine Coast Peninsula Region. Sechelt.

Marshall Macklin Monaghan, 1983. The Economic Profile of the Powell River
Region, Vancouver.

McCammon, J.W., 1977. Surficial Geology and Sand and Gravel Deposits of
Sunshine Coast, Powell River and Campbell River Areas. Bulletin 65.
British Columbia, Ministry of Mines and Petroleum Resources,
Victoria.

Personal Communications

Anonymous. District Ferries Office. British Columbia, Ministry of
Transportation and Highways. Courtenay.

Anonymous. MacMillan Bloedel Ltd., Powell River.

Dudas, B. British Columbia, Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum
Resources, Burnaby.

Hamilton, R.W. British Columbia Ferry Corporation, Victoria.

Ladret, F. Powell River Regional District, Powell River.

Marine Services Clerk. British Columbia, Ministry of Transportation and
Highways, Operational Services Division, Marine Services Section,
Victoria.

McCulloch, C. Powell River Tourist Development Commission, Powell River.

Porter, B. Regional District of Comox-Strathcona, Courtenay.

Proverb, T. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources
Branch, Victoria.

Ryll, A. Canada Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Small Craft Harbours
Branch, Vancouver.

The Physical Setting

6.5.2 Physiography

- Barker, M.L., 1974. Water Resources and related Land Uses: Strait of Georgia - Puget Sound Basin. Geographical Paper 54. Canada, Department of Environment. Lands Directorate, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., 1975. Surficial Sediments of the Northern Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada, Paper 75-1B. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., 1981. Late Quaternary Geology and Geochronology of British Columbia: Part 2 - Summary and Discussion of Radiocarbon - Dated Quaternary History. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-35. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J. and B.D. Bornhold, 1980. Morphology and Littoral Processes of the Pacific Coast of Canada, in: The Coastline of Canada. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-10. Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., J.R. Harper, R.J. Hebda and D.E. Howes, 1982. Late Quaternary Sea Levels and Coastal Movements, Coastal British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, Ottawa.
- Hora, Z.D. and F.C. Basham, 1980. Sand and Gravel Study 1980: British Columbia Lower Mainland. Paper 1980-10. British Columbia, Ministry of Energy, Mines and Petroleum Resources, Mineral Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Leaming, S.F., 1968. Sand and Gravel in the Strait of Georgia Area. Geology Survey of Canada Paper 66-60. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Mathews, W.H. and J.W. Murray, 1966. Recent Sediments and their Environment of Deposition, Strait of Georgia and Fraser River Delta. Tenneco Oil and Minerals Ltd., Calgary.

Geology

6.5.2.2

- British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1980. Terrain Inventory Quadra Project Area. Map. (scale 1:50,000). Terrestrial Studies Branch, Victoria.
- Clague, J.J., 1976. Quadra Sand and its Relationship to the Late Wisconsin Glaciation of Southwestern British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences, 13. Ottawa.

Clague, J.J., 1981. Late Quaternary Geology and Geochronology of British Columbia. Part 2: Summary and Discussion of Radiocarbon Dated Quaternary History. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-35. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

Hora, Z.D. and F.C. Basham, 1980. Sand and Gravel Study, 1980: British Columbia Lower Mainland Paper 1980-10. British Columbia, Ministry of Energy, Mines and Resources, Mineral Resources Branch, Victoria.

Leaming, S.F., 1968. Sand and Gravel in the Strait of Georgia Area. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 66-60. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

McCammon, J.W., 1977. Surficial Geology and Sand and Gravel Deposits of Sunshine Coast, Powell River and Campbell River Areas. Bulletin 65. British Columbia, Ministry of Mines and Petroleum Resources, Victoria.

Roddick, J.A., J.E. Miller and A.V. Okulitch, 1979. Fraser River: British Columbia - Washington. Geological Atlas Sheet 92. Geological Survey of Canada Map 1386A (scale 1:1,000,000). Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.

6.5.2.3 Soils

Frank, R.J., 1980. Proposed Coastal Zone Classification for Use in British Columbia. Department of Soil Sciences, University of British Columbia, Vancouver. Unpublished M.Sc. thesis.

Valentine, K.W.G., P.N. Sprout, T.E. Baker and L.M. Lavkulich, 1978. The Soil Landscapes of British Columbia. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Resource Analysis Branch, Victoria.

6.5.2.4 Climate

Canada, Department of Environment, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals, 1951-1980: Temperature and Precipitation. Atmospheric Environment Service, Ottawa.

Personal Communication

Schaefer, Dr. D.G., 1983 - Atmospheric Environment Service, Department of Environment, Vancouver.

6.5.2.5 Physical Oceanography

Canadian Hydrographic Service, 1983. Current Atlas. Juan de Fuca Strait to Strait of Georgia. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Ottawa.

Giovando, L.F., 1977. The Coastal Waters of British Columbia - Some General Aspects of their Physical Oceanography. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Ocean and Aquatic Sciences, Vancouver. Unpublished.

Thomson, R.E., 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans. Institute of Ocean Sciences, Victoria.

Waldichuk, M., 1957. Oceanography of the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Canada, Journal of the Fisheries Research Board, 14: pp. 321-486.

6.5.2.6 Water Resources

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981. Historical Streamflow Summary - British Columbia. Inland Waters Directorate, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1983. From data provided by Atmospheric Environment Service, Vancouver.

Selected Literature

Barker, M.L. 1974. Water resources and related land uses: Strait of Georgia - Puget Sound Basin. Geographical Paper 56. Lands Directorate, Environment Canada, Ottawa.

Brown, I.C. (ed.) 1967. Groundwater in Canada. Economic Geology Report 24. Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Geological Survey of Canada, Ottawa.

6.5.3 Biological Resources

6.5.3.1 Terrestrial Vegetation

Klinka, K., F.C. Nuzsdorfer and L. Skoda, 1979. Biogeoclimatic Units of Central and Southern Vancouver Island. British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, Victoria.

Krajina, V.J. and R.C. Brooke (eds.), 1969/1970. Ecology of Western North America. No. 1 and 2. Department of Botany, University of British Columbia, Vancouver.

Krajina, V.J., K. Klinka and J. Worrall, 1982. Distribution and Ecological Characteristics of Trees and Shrubs of British Columbia. University of British Columbia, Faculty of Forestry, Vancouver.

6.5.3.2 Seaweeds and Saltmarshes

Carefoot, T., 1977. Pacific Seashores: A Guide to Intertidal Ecology. J.J. Douglas Ltd., Vancouver.

Cushing, D.H. and J.J. Walsh, 1976. The Ecology of the Seas. Blackwell Scientific Publications. London.

De Wreede, R.E., 1978. Phenology of Sargassum nutricum (Phaeophyta) in the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Syesis 11.

Druehl, L.D., 1967. Distribution of Two Species of Laminaria As Related to Some Environmental Factors. Journal of Phycology 3.

Druehl, L.D. 1981. The Development of an Edible Kelp Culture Technology for British Columbia. Third Annual Report. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

Foreman, R.E., 1977. Benthic Community Modification and Recovery Following Intensive Grazing by Strongylocentrotus droebachiensis, Helgolander Wiss: Meeresunters 30.

Greenius, A.W., 1967. The General Status of the Seaweed Industry in British Columbia. Fisheries and Environment Canada. Ottawa.

Kozloff, E.N., 1973. Seashore Life of Puget Sound, the Strait of Georgia and the San Juan Archipelago. J.J. Douglas Ltd., Vancouver.

Mann, K.H., 1977. Destruction of Kelp Beds by Sea Urchins: A cyclical Phenomenon or Irreversible Degradation? Helgolander Wiss: Meeresunters 30.

Perkins, E.J., 1974. The Biology of Estuaries and Coastal Waters. Academic Press, London.

Ricketts, E.F. and J. Calvin, 1968. Between Pacific Tides. Stanford University Press. Stanford.

Scagel, R.F., 1978. Guide to Common Seaweeds of British Columbia. British Columbia Provincial Museum. Victoria.

Stephenson, T.A. and A. Stephenson, 1972. Life Between the Tidemarks on Rocky Shores. W.H. Freeman. San Francisco.

Vadas, R.L., 1972. Ecological Implications of Culture Studies on Neurocystis leutkana. Journal of Phycology, 8.

Personal Communications

Harrison, Dr. P.G. 1980. University of British Columbia.

6.5.3.3 Marine Mammals

Simenstad, C.A., B.S. Miller, C.F. Nyblade, K. Thornburgh, and L.J. Bledsoe, 1979. Food Web Relationships of Northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency, Washington.

Watson, L., 1981. Seaguide to Whales of the World. Nelson Canada Ltd., Scarborough.

Personal Communication

Bigg, Dr. M., 1983. Pacific Biological Station, Nanaimo.

6.5.3.4 Marine Birds

Ainley, D.G. and G.A. Sanger, 1979. Trophic Relations of Seabirds in the Northeastern Pacific Ocean and Bering Sea. In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America. J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.) U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11. Washington.

Hunter, R.A. and L.E. Jones, 1982. Coastal Waterfowl and Habitat Inventory Program: Summary Report and Appendices. British Columbia Ministry of Environment, Terrestrial Studies Branch, Victoria.

King, J.G. and G.A. Sanger, 1979. Oil Vulnerability Index for Marine Oriented Birds. In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America. J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.). U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11, Washington.

Manuwal, D.A. and R.W. Campbell, 1979, 1979. Status and Distribution of Breeding Seabirds of Southeastern Alaska, British Columbia and Washington. In: Conservation of Marine Birds of Northern North America. J.C. Bartonek and D.N. Nettleship (eds.). U.S. Department of Interior, Fish and Wildlife Service, Wildlife Research Report 11. Washington.

Simenstad, C.A., B.S. Miller, C.F. Nyblade, K. Thornburgh and L.J. Bledsoe, 1979. Food Web Relationships of Northern Puget Sound and the Strait of Juan de Fuca. U.S. Environmental Protection Agency. Washington.

Supplementary Literature

Frederickson, L.H. and T.S. Taylor. 1982. Management of Seasonally Flooded Impoundments for Wildlife. Resource Publication 148. U.S. Department of Interior. Fish and Wildlife Service. Washington.

Leach, B., 1982. Waterfowl on a Pacific Estuary. Special Publication No. 5. British Columbia Provincial, Victoria.

Robertson, I., 1978. Low Seabird Densities in the Pelagic Environment of the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. In: Pacific Science 31(3).

6.5.3.5 Fish and Shellfish Resources

6.5.3.5.1. Fisheries (finfish)

6.5.3.5.1.1. Anadromous and resident species

- Alderdice, D.F., R.A. Barns, and F.P.J. Velsen, 1977.
Factors Affecting Deposition, Development and Survival of
Salmonid Eggs and Alevins. A Bibliography, 1965-75.
Technical Report No. 743. Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.*
- Archibald, D.M., and C.C. Graham, 1981. Populations of Pacific
salmon - British Columbia, 1970-1979. Manuscript Report
No. 1616. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans,
Salmonid Enhancement Program, Vancouver.*
- Argue, A.W., and K.R. Pitre, 1972.
Distribution of Commercial and Sport Vessels fishing Pacific
Salmon in Southern British Columbia Marine Waters, Based on
Overflights from 1965 to 1971. Technical Report 1972-1973.
Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries Service,
Vancouver.*
- Argue, A.W., J. Coursley, and G.D. Harris, 1977.
Preliminary revision of Georgia Strait and Juan de Fuca Strait
Tidal Salmon Sport Catch Statistics, 1972 to 1976, Based on
Georgia Strait Head Recovery Program Data. Technical Report
Series PAC/T-77-16. Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.*
- Aro, K.V., 1972-1980. Indian Subsistence Catch Statistics on File.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Service
Branch, Nanaimo.
- Aro, K.V., and M.P. Shepard, 1967.
Salmon of the North Pacific Ocean - Part IV. Spawning
Populations of North Pacific Salmon. 5. Pacific Salmon in
Canada. Bulletin No. 23. International North Pacific Fisheries
Commission, Vancouver.
- British Columbia, Ministry of Environment and Canada, Department of
Fisheries and Oceans, 1979-1981. Salmonid Enhancement Program,
Annual reports.*
- Bijsterveld. L., 1983. The British Columbia Tidal Water Sport Diary
Program 1981. Manuscript Report No. 1717. Canada, Department of
Fisheries and Oceans, Economics and Statistics Branch,
Vancouver.

British Columbia, Ministry of Recreation and Conservation, 1973-74 to 1982-83 Steelhead Harvest Analyses. Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1977-1981. Annual Reports. Field Services Branch, Vancouver.*

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1975-1981. British Columbia Catch Statistics (Annual reports). Vancouver. *

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, 1975. Salmon Sport Fishing Catch Statistics for B.C. Tidal Waters. Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1975-1982. Spawning Files. Vancouver.

Ellis, D. (Editor), 1977. Pacific Salmon Management For People. Western Geographical Series 13. University of Victoria, Victoria.

Facchin, A., and G. King, 1980. Lake Survey and Study Record for the Lower Mainland Region of British Columbia. Technical Circular No. 47. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.

Friedlander, M.J. and G. Reif, 1979. Working Paper on Indian Food Fisheries and Salmonid Enhancement Edwin, Reid and Associates for Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver.

Harding, E.A., and Erickson, 1975. An Inventory of Streams of the Sechelt Peninsula. British Columbia Fish and Wildlife Branch, Inventory Section, Victoria. Unpublished manuscript.

Hart, J.L., 1973. Pacific Fishes of Canada. Bulletin No. 180. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa, Ontario.

Healey, M.C., 1978.

The Distribution, Abundance and Feeding Habits of Juvenile Pacific Salmon in Georgia Strait, British Columbia. Technical Report No. 788. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Healey, M.C., R.J. LeBrasseur, J.R. Sibert, W.E. Barraclough, and J.C. Mason, 1978.

Ecology of Young Salmon in Georgia Strait. In: Proceedings of the 1976 Northeast Pacific Pink and Chum Salmon Workshop, Juneau, Alaska. G.K. Gunstrom (ed.). *

Knapp, W. and M. Lashmar, 1978.

MacMillan Bloedel Pulp and Paper Mill (Powell River). Fisheries Resources of Fisheries and Marine Service Statistical Areas 15 and 16. Internal Report. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Habitat Protection Unit, Vancouver.

Levy, D., 1977.

Bibliography of Source Literature - Estuary Utilization by Salmonids. University of British Columbia, Westwater Research Centre, Vancouver.

MacGregor, M., 1982.

The Tidal Sport Fishing Diary Program. Report on the Pilot Years 1979-1980. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver. *

Marshall, D.E., R.F. Brown, V.D. Chanley, and D.G. Demontier, 1977.

Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 13. (Campbell River). Data Report Series PAC/D-77-1. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *

Marshall, D.E., R.F. Brown, V.D. Chanley, and L.L. Shannon, 1976.

Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 28 (Howe Sound - Burrard Inlet). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-4. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *

Marshall, D.E., V.D. Chahley, and L.L. Shannon, 1976.

Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Escapements of Statistical Area 16 (Pender Harbour). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-1. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *

- Marshall, D.E., V.D. Chahley, and L.L. Shannon, 1976.
Preliminary Catalogue of Salmon Streams and Spawning Escapements of Statistical Area 15 (Powell River). Technical Report Series PAC/D-76-2. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *
- Northern Natural Resource Services Ltd., 1978.
Collection of Data from Marine Tag-Recovery Programs Conducted from 1925-1977 in British Columbia Coastal Waters. 5 Volumes. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Salmonid Enhancement Program, Vancouver.
- Oguss, E., and T.E. Andrews, 1977.
Incidental Catches of Steelhead Trout in the Commercial Salmon Fisheries. Fisheries Management Report No. 7. British Columbia, Department of Recreation and Travel Industry, Fish and Wildlife Branch, Victoria.
- Parker, R.R., and R.J. LeBrasseur, 1976.
Ecology of Early Sea Life, Pink and Chum Juveniles. In: Proceedings of the 1974 Northeast Pacific Pink and Chum Salmon Workshop. D.R. Harding, editor.
- Phillips, A.C., and W.E. Barraclough, 1978.
Early Marine Growth of Juvenile Pacific Salmon in the Strait of Georgia and Saanich Inlet, British Columbia. Technical Report No. 830. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *
- Schmidt, A.H., C.C. Graham, and T.E. McDonald, 1979.
Summary of Literature on Four Factors Associated with Salmon and Trout Fresh Water Life History. Manuscript Report No. 1487. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *
- Scott, W.B. and E.J. Crossman, 1973. Freshwater Fishes of Canada. Bulletin No. 184. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.

* Available for reference in Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans libraries.

6.5.3.5.1.2 Groundfish

Anonymous, 1978.

The Pacific Halibut: Biology, Fishery and Management.
Technical Report No. 16. The International Pacific Halibut
Commission, Seattle.

Beamish, R.J., 1976.

Pacific Hake and Walleye Pollock Study, Strait of Georgia
Cruise, A.P. Knight, October 3-9 (November 18-20), 1974.
Manuscript Report No. 1378 (1379). Canada, Fisheries Research
Board, Nanaimo.*

Beamish, R.J., D. Eftoda, R. Scarsbrook and M. Smith, 1976.

Pacific Hake and Walleye Pollock Study, Strait of Georgia
Cruise, A.P. Knight, April 7-18, 1975. Manuscript Report
No. 1380. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*

Beamish, R.J., G.A. McFarlane, K.R. Weir, M.S. Smith,

J.R. Scarsbrook, A.J. Cass and C.C. Wood, 1982.
Observations on the Biology of Pacific Hake, Walleye Pollock,
and Spiny Dogfish in the Strait of Georgia, Juan de Fuca Strait
and off the West Coast of Vancouver Island and the United
States. Arctic Harvester, July 13-29, 1976. Manuscript Report
No. 1650. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource
Services Branch, Nanaimo.*

Beamish, R.J. and M.S. Smith, 1976.

A Preliminary Report on the Distribution, Abundance and Biology
of Juvenile Spiny Dogfish (Squalus acanthias) in the Strait of
Georgia and their Relationship with Other Fishes. Technical
Report No. 629. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment,
Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.

Beamish, R.J., M.S. Smith, and R. Scarsbrook, 1978.

Hake and Pollock Study, Strait of Georgia Cruise, G.B. Reed,
January 6 - February 21, 1975. Data Report No. 48. Canada,
Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine
Services, Nanaimo.*

Beamish, R.J., M.S. Smith, R. Scarsbrook, and C. Wood, 1976.

Hake and Pollock Study, Strait of Georgia Cruise, G.B. Reed,
June 16-27, 1975. Data Record No. 1. Canada, Department of
the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*

Bijsterveld, L., 1983. The British Columbia Tidal Water Sportfishing

Diary Program - 1981. Manuscript Report No. 1717. Canada,
Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Economics and Statistics
Branch, Vancouver.*

- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1980.
Spiny Dogfish. Fact Sheet. Information Branch, Vancouver.
- Forrester, C.R., and K.S. Ketchen, 1963.
A Review of the Strait of Georgia Trawl Fishery. Bulletin No. 139.
Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.*
- Forrester, C.R. and J.E. Smith, 1974.
The Trawl Fishery in the Strait of Georgia and Vicinity 1960-1972.
Circular 96. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.
- Ketchen, K.S., 1961.
Observations on the Ecology of the Pacific Cod (Gadus macrocephalus) in Canadian waters. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 18.*
- Ketchen, K.S., 1979.
An Overview of the Strait of Georgia Winter Trawl Fishery, 1951-52 to 1977-78. Manuscript Report Series No. 1511.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*
- Ketchen, K.S. (Editor). 1980.
Assessment of Groundfish Stocks off the West Coast of Canada (1979). Data Report No. 185. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Ketchen, K.S. 1981.
Preliminary Study of the Incidence of Halibut in Catches by the West Coast Trawl Fishery for Groundfish 1978-1980. Manuscript Report No. 1678. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Ketchen, K.S. and C.S. Forrester, 1954.
Migration of the Lemon Sole (Parophrys vetulus) in the Strait of Georgia. Pacific Progress Report 104. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo. *
- Leaman, J.R., 1982. Catch and Effort Statistics of the Canadian Groundfish Fishery on the Pacific Coast in 1981. Technical Report No. 1124. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Low, C.J. and R.J. Beamish, 1978.
A Study of the Nesting Behaviour of Ling Cod (Ophiodon elongatus) in the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Technical Report No. 843. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*

- McFarlane, G.A., R.J. Beamish, M.S. Smith, V. Egan and D. Brown, 1982.
Results of Spiny Dogfish Tagging in the Strait of Georgia, Queen Charlotte Sound, Hecate Strait and Dixon Entrance during 1980. Manuscript Report No. 1646. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- McFarlane, G.A., R.J. Beamish and K.R. Weir, 1982.
Study of the Biology and Distribution of Pacific Hake during the First Commercial Fishery Conducted in the Strait of Georgia by the M/V Callistratus, February 16-17, March 10-April 3, and May 12, 1979. Manuscript Report No. 1650. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- McFarlane, G.A., W. Shaw, J.M. Thompson, J.R. Scarsbrook, M.S. Smith and K.L. Best, 1982.
Data Collected During Hake and Pollock assessments, Strait of Georgia Cruises, February 20-May 2, and July 3, 1981. Data Report No. 339. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- Phillips, A.C., and W.E. Barraclough, 1977.
On the Early Life History of the Ling cod (Ophiodon elongatus) Technical Report No. 756. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *
- Shaw, W., G.A. McFarlane, and R.J. Beamish, 1983.
An Examination of the Biology and Distribution of Pacific Hake, Walleye Pollock and Spiny Dogfish in the Strait of Georgia, G.B. Reed, May 25-June 18, 1976. Manuscript Report No. 1697. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- Smith, J.E., 1979.
Catch and Effort Statistics of the Canadian Groundfish Fishery on the Pacific Coast in 1978. Technical Report No. 891. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- Smith, J.E., 1980.
Catch and Effort Statistics of the Canadian Groundfish Fishery on the Pacific coast in 1979. Technical Report No. 961. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- Smith, J.E., 1981.
Catch and Effort Statistics of the Canadian Groundfish Fishery on the Pacific Coast in 1980. Technical Report No. 1032. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *
- Stocker, M. (Editor), 1981.
Groundfish Stock Assessments off the West Coast of Canada in 1981 and Recommended Allowable Catches for 1982. Manuscript Report No. 1626. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *

- Taylor, F.H.C. and L.W. Barner, 1976.
The Distribution and Abundance of Hake, Pollock and Dogfish
in the Strait of Georgia in 1976 Determined by Digital
Echo-integration. Manuscript Report Series No. 1410. Canada,
Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- Thompson, J.M., 1981.
Preliminary Report on the Population Biology and Fishery of
Walleye Pollock (*Theragra chalcogramma*) off the Pacific Coast of
Canada. Technical Report No. 1031. Canada, Department of
Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Thompson, J.M. and R.J. Beamish, 1979.
An Examination of the Biology and Distribution of Walleye
Pollock in Dixon Entrance, Hecate Strait, and the Mainland Inlets
off Queen Charlotte Sound, and in the Strait of Georgia during
March 14 - April 21, 1978. Data Report No. 173. Canada,
Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Nanaimo.*
- Thompson J.M. and G.A. McFarlane, 1982.
Distribution and Abundance of Pacific Hake and Walleye Pollock
in the Strait of Georgia, March 24-May 2, 1981. Manuscript Report
No. 1661. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource
Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Venables, N.L., 1978.
Inventory of Biological Samples Taken in the Commercial Ground-
fish Fishery in British Columbia in 1977. Data Report No. 54.
Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and
Marine Service, Nanaimo. *
- Westrheim, S.J., 1974.
Explorations of Deep-water Trawling Grounds in the Strait of
Georgia in 1974. Manuscript Report Series No. 1320. Canada,
Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- Westrheim, S.J., 1977.
Production and stock Assessment of Principal Groundfish stocks
off British Columbia. Industrial Report No. 94. Canada,
Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine
Service, Nanaimo.*
- Westrheim, S.J., 1980.
The Trawl Fishery in the Strait of Georgia and Vicinity,
1945-1977. Manuscript Report No. 1563. Canada, Department
of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service,
Nanaimo.*

* Available for reference in Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Oceans libraries.

6.5.3.5.1.3 Herring

- Alderdice, D.F. and F.P.J. Velsen, 1971.
Some Effects of Salinity and Temperature on Early Development of Pacific Herring (Clupea pallasii). Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 28.*
- Barraclough, W.E., 1967.
Occurrence of Larval Herring (Clupea pallasii) in the Strait of Georgia during July 1966. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 24.
- Bijsterveld, L., 1983.
The British Columbia Tidal Water Sportfishing Diary Program - 1981. Manuscript Report No. 1717. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Economics and Statistics Branch, Vancouver.*
- Blankenbeckler, D. (Editor), 1977.
Proceedings of the Third Pacific Coast Herring Workshop, June 22-23, 1976. Manuscript Report No. 1421. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo. *
- Chalmers, D.D. and P.E. Sprout, 1982.
Review of the 1979-1980 British Columbia Herring Fishery and Spawn Abundance. Industry Report No. 133. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver. *
- Chalmers, D.D., P.E. Sprout, A. Barber and S. Benoit. 1982.
Review of the 1980-81 British Columbia Herring Fishery and Spawn Abundance. Industry Report No. 134. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver.*
- Haegle, C.W., 1982.
Diving Survey Assessment of 1981 Herring Spawn in British Columbia. Manuscript Report No. 1638. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Hourston, A.S., 1977.
Publications and Reports on Pacific Herring from Investigations Conducted at or in Cooperation with the Pacific Biological Station. Manuscript Report No. 1427. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*
- Hourston, A.S., 1978.
The Decline and Recovery of Canada's Pacific Herring Stocks. Technical Report No. 784. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Hourston, A.S., 1979.

Stock Assessment for British Columbia Herring Management Units in 1979, and Forecasts of the Available Roe Catch in 1980. Manuscript Report No. 1550. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Hourston, A.S., 1982.

Publications and Reports on Pacific Herring Arising from Investigations Conducted at or in Cooperation with the Pacific Biological Station - Vol. 2, 1977-1981. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *

Hourston, A.S. and C.W. Haegele, 1980.

Herring on Canada's Pacific Coast. Special Publication No. 48. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.

Hourston, A.S., and J.S. Hamer, 1979.

Definitions and Codings of Localities, Sections, Management Units and Divisions for British Columbia Herring Data. Manuscript Report No. 1533. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Humphreys, R.D. and A.S. Hourston, 1978.

British Columbia Herring Spawn Deposition Manual. Special publication. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.

Humphreys, R.D. and L.A. Webb, 1973.

The Abundance of Herring Spawn in the Coastal Waters of British Columbia. Technical Report Series No. PAC/T-73-10. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver. *

Jones, B.C., 1972.

Effect of Intertidal Exposure on Survival and Embryonic Development of Pacific Herring Spawn. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada 29. *

McEachen, D.B., 1975.

Highlights of the British Columbia Herring Fishery, 1972-74. Technical Report Series PAC/T-25-30. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Special Economic Programs and Intelligence Branch.

Ramey, C.W., and W.P. Wickett, 1973.

Empirical Relations Between Physical Factors in Coastal Waters and Herring Population Sizes. Technical Report No. 381. Canada, Department of Fisheries, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*

Webb, L.A., 1974. The Abundance of Herring Spawn in the Coastal Waters of British Columbia. Technical Report Series PAC/T-25-30. Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.*

Webb, L.A., 1976.

Review of the 1975-76 Herring Fishery and Spawn Abundance. Technical Report Series PAC/T-76-19. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.*

Webb, L.A., 1977.

Status of British Columbia Roe Fishery. Manuscript Report Series 1421. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*

Webb, L.A. and A.S. Hourston, 1979.

Review of the 1976-77 British Columbia Herring Fishery and spawn Abundance. Industry Report No. 110. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Vancouver.*

Webb, L.A., A.S. Hourston and B.C. Jubinville, 1980.

Review of the 1977-78 British Columbia Herring Fishery and Spawn Abundance. Industry Report No. 112. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Vancouver.

* Available for reference in Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans libraries.

6.5.3.5.2 Shellfish

Bernard, F.R., 1980.

Preliminary Report on the Potential Commercial Squid of British Columbia. Technical Report No. 942. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *

Bernard, F.R. (Editor), 1982.

Assessment of Invertebrate Stocks off the West Coast of Canada (1981). Technical Report No. 1074. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *

Bernard, F.R. and D.C. Miller, 1973.

Preliminary Investigation on the Red Sea Urchin Resources of British Columbia (Strongylocentrotus franciscanus Agassiz). Technical Report No. 400. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo. *

Bijsterveld, L., 1983.

The British Columbia Tidal Waters Sportfishing Diary Program - 1981. Manuscript Report No. 1717. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Economics and Statistics Branch, Vancouver. *

Bourne, N. and G.D. Heritage, 1979.

Pacific Oyster Breeding in Pendrell Sound, 1974. Technical Report No. 858. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Boutillier, J.A., A.N. Yates and T.H. Butler, 1977.

G.B. Reed, Shrimp cruise 77-5-1, May 3-14, 1977. Data Report No. 37. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo. *

Boutillier, J.A., J.R. Carmichael, J. Cooper and K. Pasmans, 1981.

Prawn Trap Exploration of British Columbia Offshore Waters, August 1, 1980 - December 1980. Manuscript Report No. 1621. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Nanaimo. *

Breen, P.A.

The Ecology of Red Sea Urchins in British Columbia. International Symposium on Coastal Pacific Marine Life, Bellingham, Washington.

Breen, P.A., 1980.

Measuring Fishing Intensity and Annual Production in the Abalone Fishery of British Columbia. Technical Report No. 947. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo. *

Breen, P.A., 1980.

Muscled Mollusc. Dive 6 (6).

- Breen, P.A., and B.E. Adkins, 1980.
Spawning in a British Columbia Population of Northern Abalone
Haliotis kamtschatkana. The Veliger, 23(2).
- Breen, P.A., and B.E. Adkins, 1981.
Abalone Surveys and Tagging Conducted During 1979. Manuscript
Report No. 1623. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans,
Resource Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Brett, J.R., J.R. Calaprice, R.J. Ghelardi, W.A. Kennedy, D.B. Quayle
and C.T. Shoop, 1972.
A Brief on Mariculture. Technical Report No. 301.
Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, 1982.
Oyster Culture and Management Areas, May 1982. Map.
Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Butler, T.H., 1964.
Growth, Reproduction and Distribution of Pandalus Shrimp in
British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of
Canada 21.*
- Butler, T.H., 1967.
Shrimp Fishing in British Columbia. Fisheries of Canada.
June 1967 19(7).
- Butler, T.H., 1968.
The Shrimp Fishery of British Columbia. Fisheries Report 57.
United Nations, F.A.O.
- Butler, T.H., 1970.
Synopsis of the Biological Data on the Prawn Pandalus
platyceros, Brandt. F.A.O. Fisheries Report 4(57).
- Butler, T.H., 1980.
Shrimp of the Pacific Coast of Canada. Canadian Bulletin of
Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 202.*
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1975-1981.
British Columbia Catch Statistics (Annual reports). Vancouver.*
- Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans.
Clams of British Columbia. Information Branch, Vancouver.

- Charman, E.A. and D.W. Smith, 1976.
Shellfish Resource Study of Malaspina, Okeover, Lancelot,
Theodosia Inlets. Fisheries Management Report No. 6. British
Columbia, Department of Recreation and Travel Industry,
Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Clayton, W.E.L. and R.K. Cox, 1982.
Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia 1981. Draft. Data
Report No. 1. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Marine
Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Cox, R.K., 1979.
The geoduck, Panope generosa: some information on Distribution,
Life History, Harvesting, Marketing and Management in British
Columbia. Fisheries Management Report No. 15. British Columbia,
Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.
- Cox, R.K., and E.M. Charman, 1980.
A Survey of Abundance and Distribution (1977) of the Geoduck
clam Panope generosa in Queen Charlotte, Johnstone and Georgia
Straits, B.C. Fisheries Development Report No. 16. British
Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch,
Victoria.
- Dorcey, A.H.J., 1979.
Oysters, Clams, Marine Plants: The Development of Small and
Beautiful Industries. In: Coastal Resources in the Future of
British Columbia. A.H.J. Dorcey, (ed.). University of British
Columbia, Westwater Research Centre, Vancouver.
- Fedorenko, A.Y. and P.E. Sprout, 1982.
Abalone Biology, Fishery Regulations, Commercial Catch
(1952-1980), and Current State of Resource in British Columbia.
Manuscript Report No. 1658. Canada, Department of Fisheries
and Oceans, Prince Rupert.*
- Fralick, J.E. and D.L. Tillapough, 1979.
A Review of Smaller Fishery - Mariculture Industries in British
Columbia: Mussels, Abalone, Geoducks, Clams, Horse Clams, and
Marine Plants. Information Report No. 3. University of British
Columbia, Westwater Research Centre, Vancouver.

- Harbo, R.M. and S.D. Peacock, 1983.
The Commercial Geoduck Clam Fishery in British Columbia, 1976 to 1981. Manuscript Report No. 1712. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Field Services Branch, Nanaimo.*
- Heritage, G.D. and N. Bourne, 1978.
Pacific Oyster Breeding in Hotham Sound and Ladysmith Harbour 1974 and 1975. Manuscript Report No. 1454. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*
- Heritage, G.D. and N. Bourne, 1979.
Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia, 1977. Technical Report No. 882. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Fisheries and Marine Service, Nanaimo.*
- Heritage, G.D., N. Bourne and D.W. Smith, 1977.
Pacific Oyster Breeding in British Columbia, 1976. Manuscript Report No. 1419. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- Heritage, G.D., P.A. Breen and N. Bourne, 1976.
Pacific Oyster Breeding in Pendrell Sound, 1975. Manuscript Report No. 1406. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- MacCrimmon, H.R., J.E. Stewart and J.R. Brett, 1974.
Aquaculture in Canada. The Practice and the Promise. Bulletin No. 188. Canada, Department of the Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service, Ottawa.*
- Neave, F., 1947.
Investigations on Commercial Clams.
British Columbia, Department of Fisheries, Victoria.
- Neilson, L.N., 1981.
Shrimps and Prawns: Potential Subjects for Mariculture in British Columbia. Information Report No. 2. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.

- Quayle, D.B., 1969.
Pacific Oyster Culture in British Columbia. Bulletin No. 169.
Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.*
- Quayle, D.B., 1971.
Pacific Oyster Raft Culture in British Columbia. Bulletin
No. 178. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.*
- Quayle, D.B., 1974.
The Intertidal Bivalves of British Columbia. Handbook 17.
British Columbia Provincial Museum, Victoria.
- Quayle, D.B., 1978.
A Preliminary Report on the Possibilities of Mussel Culture in
British Columbia. Technical Report No. 815. Canada, Department
of Fisheries and Environment, Fisheries and Marine Service,
Nanaimo.*
- Quayle, D.B. and N. Bourne, 1972.
The Clam Fisheries of British Columbia. Bulletin No. 179.
Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.*
- Quayle, D.G. and D.W. Smith, 1976.
A Guide to Oyster Farming. British Columbia, Ministry of
Environment, Marine Resources Branch, Victoria.*
- Scrivener, J.C. and T.H. Butler, 1971.
A Bibliography of Shrimps of the Family Pandalidae, Emphasizing
Economically Important Species of the Genus Pandalus. Technical
Report No. 241. Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Nanaimo.*
- Smith, D.W., 1975.
Manual for Assessment of Oyster Growing Areas. Fisheries
Management Report No. 5. British Columbia, Ministry of
Recreation and Conservation, Marine Resources Branch,
Victoria.
- Valiela, D., 1979.
Oyster Ecology and Culture in British Columbia. In: The
British Columbia Oyster Industry: Policy Analysis for Coastal
Resource Management, Volume I. Technical Report No. 19.
University of British Columbia, Westwater Research Centre,
Vancouver.

* Available for reference in Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Oceans libraries.

6.5.3.5.3 Species Names

Butler, T.H., 1980.

Shrimp of the Pacific Coast of Canada. Bulletin No. 202.
Canada, Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences, Ottawa.*

Hart, J.L., 1973.

Pacific Fishes of Canada. Bulletin No. 180. Canada, Fisheries
Research Board, Ottawa.*

Quayle, D.B. and N. Bourne, 1972.

The Clam Fisheries of British Columbia. Bulletin No. 179.
Canada, Fisheries Research Board, Ottawa.*

* Available for reference in Canada, Department of Fisheries and
Oceans libraries.

6.5.3.5.4 Personal Communications (1982-83)

In addition to those individuals noted in section 6.2.8, the advice
and assistance of the following persons is noted:

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans

Pacific Region, Vancouver

L. Bijsterveld

M. Hancock

M. Kostner

B. Masse

J. Leaman, Pacific Biological Station

British Columbia, Ministry of Environment

S. Billings, Fish and Wildlife Branch

6.5.4 Recreational Resources

Canada, Department of Environment. 1978. Canada Land Inventory Land Capability for Recreation. Map. Lands Directorate, Ottawa.

Supplemental Literature

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks, and Housing 1979.
"Malaspina Master Plan". Land Management Branch, Burnaby

Walmsley M. and J. Block, 1976. "Coastal Zone Information for Determining Recreation Potential of the Malaspina Peninsula." Terrain Systems, Analysis/Interpretation Division, Ministry of Environment, Environmental and Land Use Committee Secretariat, Victoria.

Wolferstan, W.H., 1971. Marine Recreation in the Desolation Sound Region of British Columbia. Masters Thesis. Department of Geography, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby.

6.5.5. Physical Processes and Energy

6.5.5.1 Regional Wave Climate

Associate Committee on the National Building Code, 1975. Climate Information for Building Design in Canada. National Research Council, Ottawa.

Associate Committee for Research on Shoreline Erosion and Sedimentation, 1980. Canadian Coastal Conference Proceedings. National Research Council. Ottawa.

Associate Committee for Research on Shoreline Erosion and Sedimentation, 1983. Canadian Coastal Conference Proceedings. National Research Council, Ottawa.

Bascom, W., 1980. Waves and Beaches - The Dynamics of the Ocean Surface. Anchor Press/Doubleday, New York.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981. Coastal Resources Folio: East Coast Vancouver Island (Race Point to Hatch Point and Adjacent Islands). British Columbia Volume II. Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.) Waves Recorded Off Halibut Bank, British Columbia, Station 97, January 11, 1974 to May 16, 1974. Marine Environmental Data Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.) Waves Recorded Off Roberts Bank, British Columbia, Station 108, February 7, 1974 to April 3, 1976. Marine Environmental Data Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.) Waves Recorded Off Powell River, British Columbia, Station 112, December 10, 1976 to March 14, 1977. Marine Environmental Data Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.) Waves Recorded Off Lund, British Columbia, Station 117, October 12, 1977 to March 25, 1978. Marine Environmental Data Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, (n.d.) Waves Recorded Off Fisherman's Cove, Station 123, April 11, 1979 to March 27, 1980. Marine Environmental Data Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, 1983. Tide and Current Tables Volume 5: Juan de Fuca and Georgia Straits. Canadian Hydrographic Service, Ottawa.

- Canadian Climate Centre, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals, 1951-1980: Temperature and Precipitation, British Columbia. Canada, Department of Environment, Atmospheric Environment Service, Downsview.
- Canadian Climate Centre, 1982. Canadian Climate Normals, 1951-1980: Wind. Canada, Department of Environment, Atmospheric Environment Service, Downsview.
- Clague, J.J., 1981. Late Quaternary Geology and Geochronology of British Columbia. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-35. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J. and B.D. Bornhold, 1980. Morphology and Littoral Processes of the Pacific Coast of Canada, in The Coastline of Canada. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-10. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- Clague, J.J., J.R. Harper, R.J. Hebda and D.E. Howes, 1982. Late Quaternary Sea Levels and Crustal Movements, Coastal British Columbia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences 19 (3). National Research Council, Ottawa.
- Hale, P.B. and S.B. McCann, 1982. Rhythmic Topography in a Mesotidal, Low-Wave-Energy Environment. Journal of Sedimentary Petrology 52 (2).
- Harper, J.R., 1982. Geological Applications of a Wave Climate Model: Examples from Saanich Peninsula, British Columbia. Associate Committee for Research on Shoreline Erosion and Sedimentation - Western Region Workshops, Simon Fraser University, Burnaby.
- Krauel, D.P., 1983. Comparison of Two Approaches to Wind Wave Hindcasting, in: Canadian Coastal Conference, Proceedings. National Research Council, Ottawa.
- McCann, S.B. (ed.), 1980. The Coastline of Canada: Littoral Processes and Shore Morphology. Geological Survey of Canada Paper 80-10. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Ottawa.
- McCann, S.B. and P.B. Hale, 1980. Sediment Dispersal Patterns and Shore Morphology along the Strait of Georgia Coastline of Vancouver Island, in: Canadian Coastal Conference, Proceedings. National Research Council, Ottawa.
- McLaren, P., J.R. Harper and P. Hale, 1983. Coastal Environments of Southern Vancouver Island - Field Trip Guide Book 7. Geological Association of Canada, Victoria.

Owens, E.H., 1980. Physical Shorezone Analysis of Saltspring Island, British Columbia. Canada, Department of Environment, Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Schaefer, D.G., 1980. Climatic Summary Strait of Georgia. Canada, Department of Environment, Atmospheric Environment Service, Vancouver. Unpublished.

Thomson, R.E., 1974a. Longshore Current Generation by Internal Waves in the Strait of Georgia. Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences 12 (3).

Thomson, R.E., 1974b. The Tides - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 1. Pacific Yachting 9 (2).

Thomson, R.E., 1974c. Tidal Currents - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 2. Pacific Yachting 9 (2).

Thomson, R.E., 1975a. Waves - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 3. Pacific Yachting 9 (4).

Thomson, R.E., 1975b. The Strait of Georgia - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 4. Pacific Yachting 9 (5)

Thomson, R.E., 1975c. Currents in the Strait of Georgia - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 5. Pacific Yachting 9 (6).

Thomson, R.E., 1975d. Surface Currents in the Strait of Georgia - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 6. Pacific Yachting 10.

Thomson, R.E., 1975e. Currents in the Juan the Fuca Strait - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 7. Pacific Yachting 10 (2).

Thomson, R.E., 1975f. Inlets, Sills, Tide Lines and Temperatures - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 8. Pacific Yachting 10 (5).

Thomson, R.E., 1975g. Upwelling - Bringing Cold Water to the Surface - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 9. Pacific Yachting 11 (1).

Thomson, R.E., 1976a. Tidal Waves (Tsunamis) - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 10. Pacific Yachting 11 (4).

Thomson, R.E., 1976b. Winds, Waves, and Whitecaps - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 11. Pacific Yachting 11 (6).

Thomson, R.E., 1976c. Tidal Currents and the "76 Swiftsure - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 12 (5).

Thomson, R.E., 1977a. Waves in Shallow Water - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 13. Pacific Yachting 13 (4).

Thomson, R.E., 1977b. Johnstone Strait and Discovery Passage - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. Coast - Part 14. Pacific Yachting 14 (2).

Thomson, R.E., 1977c. The Oceanographic Setting of the Fraser River Delta Front. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney. Unpublished manuscript.

Thomson, R.E., 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Canadian Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Ottawa.

Personal Communications

Krauel, Dr. D.P., 1983 - Department of Physics, Royal Roads Military College, Victoria.

Murty, Dr. T.S., 1983. - Numerical Modelling, Institute of Ocean Sciences, Sidney.

Schaefer, Dr. D.G., 1982. - Atmospheric Environment Service, Department of Environment, Vancouver.

6.5.5.2 Circulation

Canadian Hydrographic Service, 1983. Current Atlas. Juan de Fuca Strait to Strait of Georgia. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Ottawa.

Giovando, L.F., 1977. The Coastal Waters of British Columbia - Some General Aspects of their Physical Oceanography. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Environment, Ocean and Aquatic Sciences, Vancouver. Unpublished.

Thomson, R.E., 1981. Oceanography of the British Columbia Coast. Special Publication of Fisheries and Aquatic Sciences 56. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans. Institute of Ocean Sciences, Victoria.

Waldichuk, M., 1957. Oceanography of the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Canada, Journal of the Fisheries Research Board, 14: pp. 321-486.

6.5.5.3 Atmospheric Mixing

Emslie, J.H., 1979. Ground-based Inversion Frequencies Determined from Surface Climatological Data. *Boundary Layer Meteorology* 16 (4).

Munn, R.E., J. Tomlin and R.L. Titus, 1970. A Preliminary Climatology of Ground-based Inversions in Canada. *Atmosphere* 8 (2).

Portelli, R.V., 1977. Mixing heights, wind speeds and ventilation coefficients for Canada. *Climatological Studies* 31. Canada, Department of Environment, Atmospheric Environment Service, Downsview.

Shaw, R.W., M.S. Hirt and M.A. Tilley, 1972. Persistence of light surface winds in Canada. *Atmosphere* 10 (1).

Personal Communications

Schaefer, Dr. D.G., 1982 - Atmospheric Environment Service, Department of Environment, Vancouver.

6.5.5.4 Seismic Hazard

Foster, H.D. and R.F. Carey, 1976. The Simulation of Earthquake Damage. In: Victoria: Physical Environment and Development. Western Geographical Series 12. University of Victoria, Victoria.

Hodgson, E.A., 1946. British Columbia Earthquake - June 23, 1946. *Journal of the Royal Astronomical Society*, Ottawa 40.

Maynard, D., 1979. Terrain Capability for Residential Settlements: Summary Report. British Columbia, Ministry of Environment, Resource Analysis Branch Victoria.

Milne, W.G., W.E.T. Smith and G.C. Rogers, 1970. Canadian Seismicity and Micro-earthquake Research in Canada. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 7.

Milne, W.G., G.C. Rogers, R.P. Riddihough, G.A. McMechan, and R.D. Hyndman, 1978. Seismicity of Western Canada. *Canadian Journal of Earth Sciences* 15.

Slawson, W.F. and J.C. Savage, 1979. Geodetic Deformation Associated with the 1946 Vancouver Island, Canada earthquake. Bulletin of the Seismological Society of America 64(5).

Thomson, R.E., 1976. Tidal waves (tsunamis) - the Physical Oceanography of the B.C. coast - Part 10. Pacific Yachting 11.

Witham, K. and W.G. Milne, 1972. Protection of the Public from Earthquake Hazards in Canada. Geophysics. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Earth Physics Branch, Ottawa.

Witham, K., W.G. Milne and W.E.T. Smith, 1970. The New Seismic Zoning Map for Canada. Geophysics. Canada, Department of Energy, Mines and Resources, Earth Physics Branch, Ottawa.

Wourinen, V., 1976. Seismic Microzonation of Victoria: A Social Response to Risk. In: Victoria - Physical Environment and Development. Western Geographical Series 12. University of Victoria, Victoria.

6.5.6. Factors of Biological Productivity

Carefoot, T., 1977. Pacific Seashores: A Guide to Intertidal Ecology. J.J. Douglas Ltd., Vancouver.

Kormondy, E.J., 1976. Concepts of Ecology. Prentice-Hall Inc., New Jersey.

Remane, A. and C. Schlieper, 1971. Biology of Brackish Water. John Wiley and Sons, Inc., New York.

Ricketts, E.F. and J. Calvin, 1968. Between Pacific Tides. Stanford University Press, Stanford.

Stockner, J.G., D.D. Cliff and K.R.S. Shortread, 1979. Phytoplankton Ecology of the Strait of Georgia, British Columbia. Journal of the Fisheries Research Board of Canada. 36.

Sumich, J.L., 1976. An Introduction to the Biology of Marine Life. W.M.C. Brown Company, Publishers, Dubuque, Iowa.

6.5.7 The Administration and Management of Coastal Resources

Berris, C.R., 1982. Coastal Planning and Management: A Framework for the Sunshine Coast Regional District - Summary. Sunshine Coast Regional District, Sechelt.

Block, J., 1980. Land Allocation Terminology. Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, Victoria.

British Columbia, Assessment Authority, 1981. Explanation of the Difference between Tree Farms and Tree Farm Licenses, Victoria. Unpublished.

British Columbia, Ministry of Forests, 1974. Forest Tenures in British Columbia. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1980. Interim Guidelines for the Review of and Processing of Coastal Log-Handling Applications. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1980. The Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing's Role in Foreshore Administration. Victoria.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, 1983. Pender Harbour Crown Foreshore Plan. Lands and Housing Regional Operations, Lower Mainland Region, Burnaby.

British Columbia, Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing (n.d.). Summary Table - Land Act - Reserves, Designations, Notations of Interest and Section 98 Transfers. Victoria. Unpublished.

British Columbia, 1980. Municipal Act, RSBC 1979, Chapter 290. Queen's Printer, Victoria.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1976. Land Use Programs in Canada - British Columbia. Lands Directorate, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1978. The Management of Coastal Resources in British Columbia: A Review of Selected Information. Vancouver.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1980. Birds Protected in Canada Under the Migratory Birds Convention Act. Occasional Paper No. 1. Canadian Wildlife Service, Ottawa.

Canada, Department of Environment, 1981. Coastal Resources Folio:
East Coast of Vancouver Island (Race Point to Hatch Point and
Adjacent Islands). British Columbia. Volumes 1 and 2.
Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Ince, J.G., 1977. Land Use Law: A Study of Legislation Governing
Land Use in British Columbia. University of British Columbia,
Vancouver.

Lefaux, S., 1982. Sunshine Coast Official Regional Parks Plan.
Third Draft. Sunshine Coast Regional District, Sechelt.

Pfister, R.E., 1979. "Park and Recreation System" in: Vancouver
Island - Land of Contrasts. Western Geographical Series 17.
University of Victoria, Victoria.

Powell River Regional District (n.d.). Background Report - Regional
Parks. Powell River. Unpublished

Slater, J., 1978. Shore Protection Analysis - An Inventory of the
Marine Shore Resources of Saanich with Shoreland Management
and Protection Recommendations. Corporation of the District of
Saanich, Saanich.

SECTION 7: GLOSSARY

PREPARED BY

D.A. Wolff
M.A. Lashmar
M.W. Dunn

EDITED BY

M.W. Dunn

**LANDS DIRECTORATE
ENVIRONMENT CANADA
VANCOUVER, B.C.**

January 1984

TABLE OF CONTENTS

	<u>Page</u>
7.1 INTRODUCTION.....	1
7.2 SELECTED DEFINITIONS FOR LAND USE AND STATUS THEMES..	2
.2.1 Economic Setting.....	2
.2.2 Fisheries Section.....	3
.2.3 Generalized Zoning and Marine Facilities.....	3
.2.4 Land/Water Status.....	4
.2.5 Land and Water Use Plans and Proposals.....	4
7.3 SELECTED DEFINITIONS FOR FISH AND SHELLFISH THEMES...	5
References.....	7
7.4 SELECTED DEFINITIONS OF SHOREZONE THEMES.....	8
Figure Beach Profile Terminology.....	9

7.1 INTRODUCTION

The Glossary section will aid the reader in understanding some of the terms used for this folio. They are generally accepted definitions in common use on the coast of British Columbia. The listing is not exhaustive, but instead, defines key terms that may cause the most problems in interpretation.

7.2 SELECTED DEFINITIONS FOR LAND USE AND STATUS THEMES

7.2.1 Economic Setting

Basic refers to an economy which exports its raw materials outside the region of origin for manufacturing.

Economic Development Commissions are advisory bodies under the jurisdiction of regional districts established for the purpose of bringing people together and enabling development activities to take place, at the same time improving the economy.

Economic Profiles are economic reports published by economic development commissions which provide an analysis of socio-economic conditions in regional districts.

Labour force participation rate is the proportion of the labour force which is actively employed.

Occupational structure refers to the occupations which make up a region's labour force.

Primary Industries are those industries which are engaged in the extraction of raw materials, i.e. logging, fishing, mining.

Processing Industries refers to those industries which are involved in the manufacturing of goods from their raw state to a secondary stage, i.e. fish canning, sawmills.

Resource-based Industries refers to those industries which harvest or exploit natural resources, e.g. fishing, forestry, mining, agriculture.

Retail and Service Space is the sum total floor space devoted to retail and service businesses.

Retirement Industry refers to the business, income and employment generated from people of retirement age.

Secondary Industries are those industries involved in the manufacturing or processing of raw materials.

Total Capital Value is the dollar value of the sum of accumulated goods devoted to the production of other goods.

7.2.2 Fisheries Section

Angler Days are the number of days fishermen spend fishing.

Average Landed Value is the price paid fishermen for their fish.

Fresh Dressed Salmon refers to salmon which are gutted, but are not frozen.

Sport Fishing Effort refers to the amount of time fishermen spend fishing, e.g. angler days.

Fisheries Statistical Areas are areas designated for the purpose of collecting statistical information on fish catch and value. They were designated by the Department of Fisheries and Oceans.

Wholesale Value refers to the price of fish after processing, i.e. canning.

7.2.3 Generalized Zoning and Marine Facilities

Agricultural Land Commission Act was promulgated in 1977 to freeze the development of all farmland in British Columbia, at which time the Agricultural Land Commission was established to act as the agricultural zoning authority.

Agricultural Land Reserves are designated zones whereby all property, whether public or private, can be used only for agricultural purposes, except as permitted under the Agricultural Land Reserves Act.

Bulk Storage Facility is a storage facility for the containment of bulk commodities like oil, gas and diesel fuels.

Generalized Zoning refers to the grouping of similar land use zones into one general category which is representative of all the zones, e.g. service commercial, retail commercial, and recreational commercial = commercial.

Marine facilities refers to structures which are located on or near the foreshore to enable access to water, e.g. marinas, wharfs, bulk storage facilities.

Regional Districts are established to carry out specific functions which are regional in nature, such as the provision of water and sewer services and regional land use planning.

7.2.4 Land Water Status

Forest Management Units are the forest areas for which the B.C. Forest Service has management responsibility.

Public Sustained Yield Unit is an area designated and managed by the B.C. Forest Service, which provides forest companies with an annual allowable cut.

Status refers to the ownership and/or administration of land and water.

Timber Licences are tenures which give the holder the exclusive right to harvest all merchantable timber in an area of Crown land during the term of the licence. The licence requires five-year management and working plans. It grants the exclusive right to harvest timber under cutting permits.

Timber Supply Areas encompass all categories of timber tenures and are designed to estimate forest yield.

Tree Farm Licence is an amalgamation of Crown and private lands into a management unit and is usually held by a large forest products company.

7.2.5 Land and Water Use Plans and Proposals

The Municipal Act establishes municipalities and regional districts and requires them to do those things specified and no other. Municipalities are autonomous as far as land use decisions are concerned except when land is in the Agricultural Land Reserve or is in a flood plain, or when the Controlled Access Highways Act applies.

7.3 SELECTED DEFINITIONS FOR FISH AND SHELLFISH THEMES

- anadromous - refers to fish which, following birth in fresh water, migrate to salt water where they attain maturity, and subsequently return to their freshwater natal stream to reproduce.
- aquaculture - the regulation and cultivation of oceanic animals for human use or consumption, e.g. oyster culture, fish farming, salmon rearing.
- bivalve - one of a class of molluscs (Pelecypodia) having a shell of two parts joined by a hinge, e.g. clams, oysters, mussels.
- char - a small-scaled trout (genus *Salvelinus*) of the Salmonidae family; includes Dolly Varden and brook trout.
- closure - in fisheries context, harvest restrictions imposed for management purposes on commercial or recreational fisheries; may be imposed as seasonal, gear or area closures.
- copepod - a member of a large order of crustaceans, usually 0.5 to 10 mm in length. These organisms often are an important food source for fish in temperate and subpolar regions.
- cover - plants, rocks, organic debris or other materials in the aquatic habitat providing shelter and protection for fish from adverse conditions and predation.
- crustacean - member of one of eight classes of the phylum Arthropoda, which includes crabs, barnacles, shrimps, crayfish.
- cultch - material laid down on oyster grounds to furnish points of attachment for the spat. See spat.
- euphausiid - a marine, shrimp-like, usually filter-feeding, crustacean approximately one inch long, belonging to the order Euphausiacea; krill.
- fry - the young stage of fishes, particularly after the yolk sac has been absorbed and active feeding has commenced.
- geoduck - a large, burrowing clam with long, muscular siphons; found subtidally along the Pacific coast from the Gulf of California to Alaska.
- gillnet - a net set vertically in the water to catch fish by entangling their gills in the mesh of the net.
- headwaters - the streams and creeks forming the sources of a river or other body of water.

invertebrate - an animal without a backbone; in aquatic systems includes insects, crustaceans, shellfish, and worms.

juvenile - a physiologically immature or undeveloped organism.

larva - the immature form of many animals after hatching. An intermediary stage before adulthood; larvae are the dispersal stage for many attached marine invertebrates.

mollusc - a member of the phylum mollusca - an invertebrate with a soft unsegmented body, usually enclosed in a calcareous shell. Includes clams, oysters, squid, octopods, and snails.

oyster lease - a type of foreshore lease granted by the provincial Ministry of Lands, Parks and Housing, and administered by the Marine Resources Branch (Ministry of Environment) for the artificial propagation of oysters.

oyster picking permit - permit granted by the Ministry of Environment, Marine Resources Branch, for the harvesting of wild oyster stocks.

paralytic shellfish poisoning (PSP) - poisoning resulting from eating shellfish (particularly bivalves) which have ingested the toxic planktonic organism Gonyaulax.

purse seine - a large fishing net with floats along the top edge and weights on the bottom edge. The net is set around a school of fish, then the bottom edge is drawn together.

reach - a section of stream of reasonably uniform gradient, stream bed, stream bank and flow pattern.

rearing - adj. - growing; usually pertains to younger growth stages; e.g. fry and juveniles.

vb. - early life activities of growth and survival, including fish feeding, territorial defence and respiration.

resident fish - fish which remain in fresh water throughout their life cycle.

roe - fish eggs, especially when still massed in the ovarian membrane.

roe herring - herring containing mature roe which are captured during the commercial fishery of the same name.

salmonid - a fish of the Salmonidae family, which includes Pacific salmon, trout and char.

seine net - a large fishing net with floats along the top edge and weights along the bottom edge.

shellfish - an aquatic invertebrate animal with a shell; typically an edible mollusc or crustacean.

spat - the microscopic spawn or young of bivalve molluscs; especially refers to oysters.

spatfall - settlement of spat on a substrate.

stock - in fisheries biology, a segment of a population that can be managed as a single unit.

trawl - to fish by dragging a large bag-like net through the water
a) midwater - to trawl midway in the water column.
b) bottom - to trawl along the bottom.

troll - to fish with a line, typically with a revolving lure, trailed behind a moving boat.

REFERENCES

Carl, G., C., 1969. Some Common Marine Fishes of British Columbia. Handbook No.23. British Columbia Provincial Museum, Victoria.

G. & C. Merriam Company, 1981. Webster's New Collegiate Dictionary. Springfield, Massachusetts.

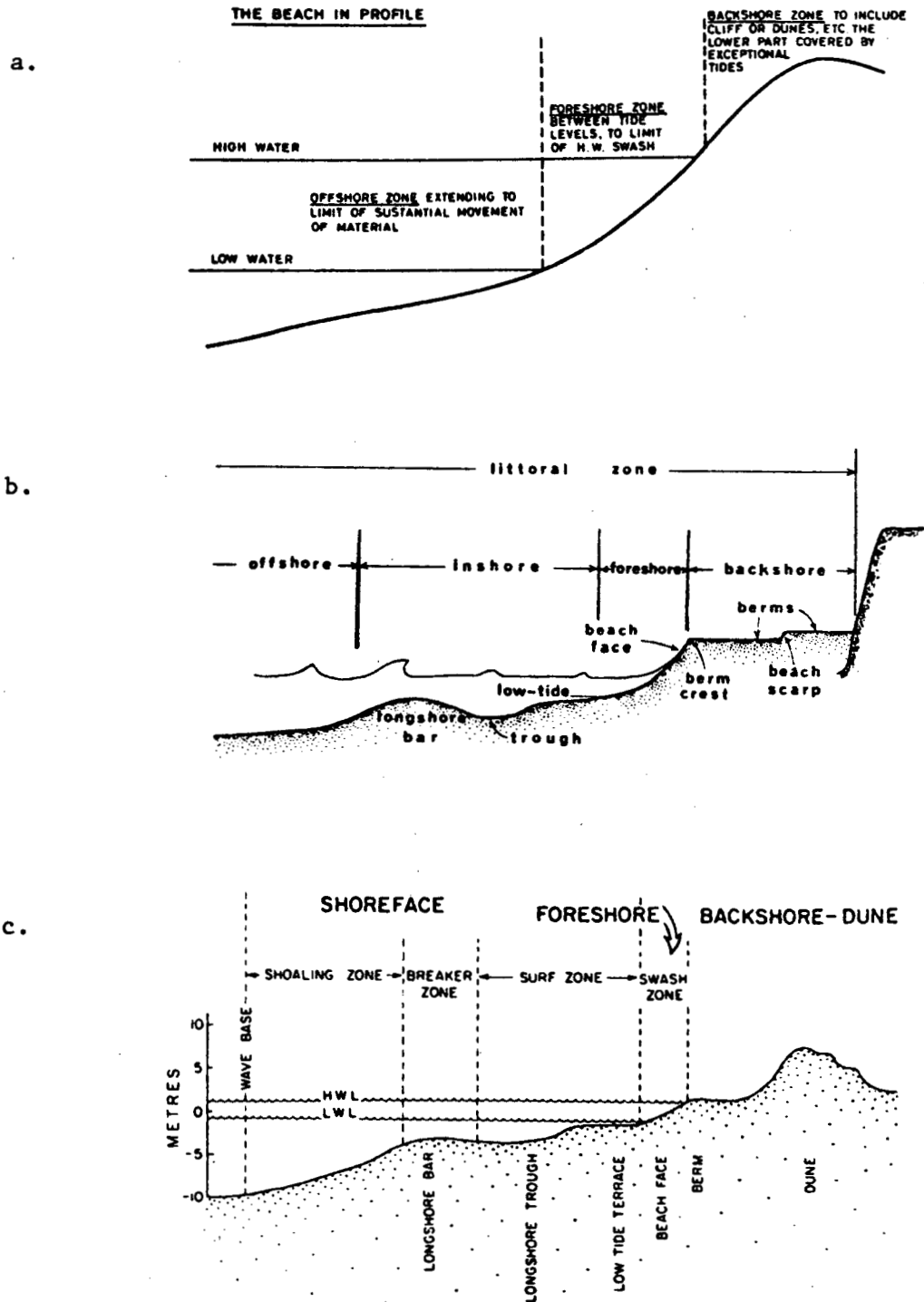
Morris, S. and A.J. Leaney, 1980. The Somass River Estuary. Status of Environmental Knowledge to 1980. Special Estuary Series No.9. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Resource Services Branch, West Vancouver.

Summers, T.J., 1983. The Coastal Zone Handbook: Terminology and Concepts of the Coastal Zone. Canada, Department of Environment, Lands Directorate, Vancouver.

Toews, D.A.A. and M.J. Brownlee, 1981. A Handbook for Fish Habitat Protection on Forest Lands in British Columbia. Canada, Department of Fisheries and Oceans, Habitat Management Division, Vancouver.

7.4 SELECTED DEFINITIONS OF SHOREZONE THEMES

- anthropogenic - man-made or man-modified features; includes those constructed by man (docks, marinas), and those removed or deposited by man (riprap, seawalls).
- apron - cliff - two or more coalescing fans (see fan) or a simple talus slope.
- bar - a ridge of unconsolidated materials built by waves and/or currents, generally running parallel to the shoreline, and can be either intertidal or subtidal.
- beach - a) a deposit along a shore extending between inner and outer limits of active wave transport. Textures and sorting of materials is variable.
b) the area extending from the limits of storm wave influence to a depth where wave-produced entrainment ceases, except at times of extraordinary sea state.
- beach face - the sloping surface of a beach in the zone subject to wave uprush (see Figure).
- berm - an accumulation of unconsolidated material above the mean high water level on beaches. The berm is flat, of variable width and characterized by a marked break in slope at the seaward edge (see Figure).
- biogenic - materials or deposits produced by plant and animal organisms excluding man.
- blowout dune(s) - generally, a sand ridge with a depression on the windward side; the depression is a result of sand removal by wind; the sand accumulates downwind to form the ridge.
- cave(s) - a subterranean hollow space in a cliff formed by the action of waves or weathering.
- channel(s) - a) delta - a linear feature periodically or continuously containing running water over a delta; it has a bed and banks.
b) river - linear feature which contains the majority of stream or river flow to the shoreline; can be a single channel or a complex system of channels separated by river bars.
c) tidal - a linear feature that dissects the tidal flat surface and is formed by tidal currents; it has a definite bed and banks.
- chaotic forms - dunes, ridges and depressions with multi-directional slopes of sand in plan an assemblage of non-linear, generally non-repetitive forms whose local relief is greater than 1 metre.
- clastic - materials made up of fragments of rock of any size or shape.



Beach profile terminology; a. after King (1972),
b. after Komar (1976), c. after Reinson (1979).

SOURCE: S.B. McCann, 1980. Shortcourse Lecture Notes Basic Nearshore Processes. National Research Council Canada. Ottawa.

- cliff - a uniform or irregular sloping face, greater than 20° made of bedrock or unconsolidated materials or both.
- debris - mixture of unconsolidated materials (gravels, soils) and man-made materials or refuse such as old building materials and metal products.
- delta - an accumulation of silt, sand or gravels at the mouth of a river or stream where it discharges into the sea, or in tidal channels by flood and ebb tidal streams. Surfaces may be level to inclined and be dissected by one or more channels. Their form is variable from fan-shaped to elongated.
- dolphin(s) - a cluster of pilings, made of lumber or concrete, driven into the seabed for support or protection.
- dune(s) - a mound or ridge, or a collection of mounds and ridges, formed by wind action on sand.
- ebb-tidal - delta - a delta formed by currents generated by falling tides.
- fan -
a) delta - a fan-shaped accumulation of river/stream derived deposits of slope angles greater than 5° .
b) cliff - a fan-shaped accumulation of unconsolidated materials (sand, gravels or rubble) at the base of a cliff derived from mass movement processes affecting the cliff face.
- fetch - distance over which no, or negligible, obstruction interferes with the friction effect of wind against the surface of a water body. Also fetch length.
- flats - tidal - a flat or gently sloping surface (less than 5°) exposed during low tide and derived from tidal processes; usually consists of fine sediments (muds) with or without organic detritus (see also channels, tidal).
- flood-tidal - delta - a delta formed by currents generated by a rising tide.
- foreshore - the zone between the high water line and the low water line. See also intertidal.
- groin (groyne) - low artificial wall of durable material extending from land into water for a particular purpose, such as interfering with the transport of bed load by currents, or protection of a segment of coast.
- high tide platform - rock - a platform extending from the mean water line landward to the high tide line. See also low tide platform, platform.

inclined - a) beach - a sloping deposit of coarse-textured materials derived from non-marine processes upslope, or, a sloping, fine-textured deposit in sheltered environments, generally the result of tidal, rather than wave, action.

b) cliff - a cliff of slopes between 20° and 35° .

intertidal - the zone between the high, high water line and the low, low water line. See also foreshore.

irregular platform - rock - platforms with hummocky surface topography with local relief of greater than 1 metre.

jetty - a structure extending into the sea designed to prevent shoaling of a channel; usually built at the mouth of a river or tidal inlet to help deepen and stabilize a channel.

lagoon - shallow stretch of water isolated from the open sea by a barrier but with connection to the sea. Lagoon deposits tend to be fine-textured, except near channels where coarser textures predominate.

levee - a) delta - a berm or bank of unconsolidated materials raised above the surface of the delta and adjacent channel.

b) tidal flat - a berm or bank of unconsolidated sediment formed beside a tidal channel; it is elevated above the general level of the surface.

low tide - platform - rock - a platform extending from low water line to the mean water line.

organic litter - vegetative matter, excluding trees; includes wood detritus, seaweed accumulations and/or marsh plant accumulations.

platform - rock - a level or inclined surface, less than 20° , formed by long-term marine erosional processes; primarily bedrock, but can have some overlying sediments.

raised - a) beach - beach deposits that are currently above the limit of storm waves; can result from low sea levels or tectonic uplift.

b) delta - a delta deposit above the high tide line that is no longer accumulating; can result from tectonic uplift or lower sea levels.

c) platform - a platform above the limit of storm waves and no longer subject to marine processes.

ramp - a) boat - a slope, generally concrete, for launching small boats.

b) platform - regional slope angles of between 5° and 20° on bedrock.

relict - a cliff, presently above the limit of storm waves, but at one time was produced or affected by marine and mass movement processes; can result from tectonic uplift and/or lower sea levels.

- ridge and swale - dunes - narrow, elongate sand ridges with steep slopes and intervening hollows; an assemblage of linear ridges and hollows with local relief greater than 1 metre.
- seastack - tall, isolated column of rock resulting generally from wave processes that have detached it from a nearby sea cliff.
- shellhash - broken shell material that has accumulated to such a degree that it is an integral part of the beach sediments; variable texture.
- shellpile - a) a recent accumulation of waste shells and shell fragments as a result of commercial shell fishery.
b) a historical deposit of shell refuse associated with man's use of the shellfish resources - Indian shell middens.
- spit - a small point composed of sand and/or gravel projecting from the shore into a body of water; the part exposed above the high water line.
- storm ridge - beach - linear or elongate ridge of coarse-textured beach materials found at the highest level of a beach profile; formed by storm wave processes.
- subtidal - the zone that extends from the low, low water line seaward to the -20 metre isobath.
- supratidal - the zone that extends landward from the high, high water line; landward limit may be established by any one of the following:
1) top of a coastal cliff;
2) to the line of permanent terrestrial vegetation;
3) the landward limit of extreme marine or tidal processes.
- terrace - a) beach - an accumulation of beach materials extending from the low tide line landward to the base of the beach face; usually less than 3%.
b) cliff - alternating steep faces and horizontal or gently sloping surfaces, the steep component is usually more extensive.
c) platform - alternating horizontal or gently sloping surfaces and low, steep faces (less than 2 metres); the horizontal component is more extensive.
- tidepools - pools of seawater remaining in depressions on the surface of a platform at low water.
- tombolo - a spit or beach that extends from the mainland of an island to another island, so that it becomes tied to the shore; part exposed above high water line.
- trench - a long, narrow excavation across the foreshore; or an excavation to provide moorage for small boats in shallow water other than marinas.

veneer - unconsolidated materials of less than one metre thickness overlying bedrock or another different textured material.

washover channel - a channel formed by the advance of seawater beyond normal limits, usually during storms and/or tidal surges in advance of storms, specifically across beach, spit or low dune deposits; also an area where temporary submergence has occurred.

washover fan - a usually fan-shaped deposit on the landward side of a washover channel as a result of sediment being carried through the channel; active while the channel is active.